KIM JONG IL

SHORT BIOGRAPHY

PYONGYANG, KOREA
JUCHE 90 (2001)

KIM JONG IL

SHORT BIOGRAPHY

Foreign Languages Publishing House
Pyongyang, Korea
Juche 90 (2001)



ON PUBLISHING *THE SHORT BIOGRAPHY OF KIM JONG IL*

Kim Jong Il has worked on the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea from the early 1960s for a long time, as the most intimate comrade of and faithful aide to President Kim Il Sung, spearheading Korea's history–past, present and future.

In the complex circumstances, both internal and external, following the demise of President Kim Il Sung, and in the face of the attempts of the imperialist forces to isolate and stifle the DPRK, he has developed and enriched the Juche idea as the guiding ideology in the era of independence, and safeguarded Juche-oriented socialism, and has been confidently promoting Korea's reunification based on the ideal of great national unity. Through his army-centred revolutionary leadership, he is inducing the whole country to strengthen its self-reliant national defence capabilities, and leading the entire nation to surmount the difficulties and trials that challenge it, and open up a broad avenue for attaining the grand target, which he has already set, of building a powerful socialist country.

Kim Jong Il is the General Secretary of the Workers' Party of Korea, the Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission and the Supreme Commander of the Korean People's Army.

The editorial board publishes this book by supplementing the previous edition published in 1998, to help the readers to get an extensive understanding of the career and activities of Kim Jong Il.

December Juche 90 (2001)

CONTENTS

1. FEBRUARY 1942–MARCH 1964 1
1. Son of Mt. Paektu 1
2. Let Us Learn for Korea 4
In the Grim Days of the War 4
"Group for the Study of the Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung" 7
Zealous Learner 8
3. Student Leader 9
Visit to Revolutionary Battle Sites on Mt. Paektu 9
Let Us Establish the Ideological System of the Party 10
Breathing New Life into the Work of the DYL 13
4. Training Himself as Successor to the Revolutionary Cause of Juche 16
O Korea, I Will Add Glory to Thee 16
Creative Way of Studying 17
Training Students to Be Revolutionaries Loyal to the Party and the Leader 21
In the Thick of Reality 22
5. Ideological and Theoretical Activities 24
The Theory of the Leader 24
Studying Economic Theories and Philosophy in a Juche-orientated Way 27
Analysis of Modern Imperialism and Revisionism 31
6. Accompanying Kim Il Sung on Field Guidance 34

2. APRIL 1964–JANUARY 1974 36
1. Starting to Work at the Party Central Committee 36
2. For the Implementation of the Line of Simultaneously Carrying Out Economic Construction and Defence Building 37
Kindling the Flames of a Great Revolutionary Upsurge 37

Turning the Whole Country into an Impregnable Fortress 39
3. Assisting Kim Il Sung in His External Activities 42
4. Revolution in Art and Literature 43
Revolution in the Cinema 43
Five Revolutionary Operas 47
5. With a Noble Sense of Obligation 50
6. The Torch of Performing the Three Major Tasks of the Technological Revolution 52
7. Creating a Fresh Method of Party Work 55

3. FEBRUARY 1974–SEPTEMBER 1980 57
1. Acclaimed as the Successor 57
2. Towards Modelling the Whole Society on the Juche Idea 60
February Declaration 60
Advancement in the Ideological Work of the Party 61
Modelling the Entire Party on the Juche Idea 64
3. Hero of Creation and Construction 66
70-Day Campaign 66
Endless Journey for Field Guidance 68
New History of the Construction of the Capital City 70
4. For a Full-Scale Inheritance of the Revolutionary Traditions 73
5. Modelling the Entire Army on the Juche Idea 76
The Army of the Leader, the Army of the Party 76
Pre-eminent General 79
6. “Let Us Meet the Requirements of Juche in Ideology, Technology and Culture!” 82
The Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement 82
“Let Us Live Our Own Way!” 84
The Scientist-Technician Shock-Brigade Movement 87
A Great Flower Garden of Juche Art and Literature 89
7. With a Cherished Desire for National Reunification 91

4. OCTOBER 1980–DECEMBER 1989 94
1. A New Milestone for the Development of the Party and the Revolution 94
The Sixth Party Congress 94
The Completion of the Laying of the Party's Foundation 96
2. Highest Incarnation of Loyalty 100
Lasting Grand Monuments 100
A Grand Political Festival 102
A Library of the Juche Idea 103
3. A Fresh Advance in Economic Construction 104
Creation of the "Speed of the 80s" 104
To Meet the Requirements of Juche in Economic Management 109
Construction of Houses for 50,000 Families 111
4. Under the Banner of the Cultural Revolution 112
Educational Revolution 112
Raising Science and Technology to World Standards 114
Further Efflorescence of Art and Literature 116
For the Development of Public Health and Physical Culture and Sport 118
5. Training the People's Army to Become Invincible 121
6. Trust and Love 125
Revolutionary Obligation 125
For the Eternal Life of the Martyrs 128
7. Lofty Feeling of Affection for Fellow Countrymen 131
Under the Banner of the Policy of Founding a Federal Republic 131
Developing the Movement of Korean residents in Japan onto a Higher Stage 135
8. The Pyongyang Festival 138

5. JANUARY 1990–JUNE 1994 141
1. Single-Hearted Unity 141
The WPK's Philosophy of Revolution 141
Letters of Trust and Affection 146
2. Defending Korean-Style Socialism 148

The Party's Leadership Is the Lifeline of the Socialist Cause 148
The Young Vanguard 153
Towards the Implementation of the Revolutionary Economic Strategy 155
3. An Outstanding Commander 158
Supreme Commander 158
DPRK-US Confrontation 161
4. For the Great Unity of the Nation 165
5. For the Rebuilding of Socialism 169

6. JULY 1994–DECEMBER 2000 173
1. The Leader Is Immortalized 173
2. In Support of the Leader's Last Instructions 177
3. Army-Centred Leadership of the Revolution 180
With the People's Army as the Pillar, the Main Force, of the Revolution 180
From Front Line to Front Line 184
4. Building Up the Political and Ideological Bulwark 186
5. Elected to the Top of the Party and State Hierarchies 189
6. Towards the Construction of a Powerful Nation 190
In Command of the "Arduous March" and Forced March 190
Towards a Second Grand Chollima Advance 193
7. The Historic Pyongyang Meeting 196
8. Widening of External Relations 199
9. Grand Festival of Victorious Socialist People 202

1

(FEBRUARY 1942–MARCH 1964)

1. SON OF MT. PAEKTU

Kim Jong Il was born on February 16, 1942, in the secret camp on Mt. Paektu in Samjiyon County, Ryanggang Province, the son of Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Suk.

Mt. Paektu, that towers over the northernmost part of Korea, known as the "land of morning calm", is the ancestral mountain of Korea, and cherishes the soul and spirit of the nation. When the sun rises on snow-capped Mt. Paektu, the 3,000-*ri* expanse of Korea and everything in the country become full of vitality. The Paektu Range, which starts at Janggun (General–Tr.) Peak, the main peak of Mt. Paektu, stretches several kilometres southeastwards to form Jong Il Peak, at the foot of which the Sobaek Stream meanders. In this valley was located the Paektusan Secret Camp. The secret camp was the central leadership base of the Korean revolution, the site where the Headquarters of the great anti-Japanese war was situated from the latter half of the 1930s to the first half of the 1940s.

The early 1940s was a time when the Second World War, unleashed by the fascists and militarists, was bringing indescribable sufferings to mankind. The Japanese imperialists conducted unprecedentedly fierce offensives against the Korean People's Revolutionary Army and at the same time intensified fascist suppression and plunder of the Korean people so as to expand their aggressive war to the whole of Asia.

In those days, Kim Il Sung was making preparations for the final offensive against the Japanese imperialist aggressors, to take the initiative in breaking through the difficulties on the road of the revolution and accomplish the cause of national liberation; he also dispatched small units, groups and political workers to various parts of Korea for an all-people resistance. Kim Jong Suk, a heroine of the anti-Japanese revolution, was

busy guiding the work of the revolutionary organizations in Korea and in the Changbai area of China.

The birth of Kim Jong Il in the days when the liberation of the country was dawning was a great event for the Korean people.

All his family members from his great-great-grandfather and great-grandfather to grandfather Kim Hyong Jik, grandmother Kang Pan Sok, great uncle Kim Hyong Gwon, uncle Kim Chol Ju, maternal uncles Kim Ki Jun and Kim Ki Song devoted their all to the sacred cause of fighting against the foreign aggressors for the country's independence and the people's liberation and freedom.

His father Kim Il Sung, the great leader the Korean people greeted for the first time in thousands of years of their history, lived his whole life solely for his country and his people, regarding "The people are my God" as his lifetime motto. He was the genius of the revolution in that he created the immortal Juche idea, ushering in a new historical age, the age of Juche, and the father of socialist Korea in that he accomplished the great cause of national liberation and prosperity under the banner of the Juche idea by turning the country, where backwardness and poverty had held sway for centuries, into a socialist power of Juche.

His mother Kim Jong Suk was an indomitable communist revolutionary fighter, who, embarking on the road of revolution in her teens, devoted her life to the struggle for the liberation of the country and the people's freedom and happiness in loyal support for the leadership of Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il is the son of the guerrillas who came from the blood of such a revolutionary family.

Kim Jong Il displayed extraordinary natural endowments from his early years.

He was completely devoted to Kim Il Sung.

In early 1946, he visited Mangyongdae with his mother.

His great-grandfather Kim Po Hyon produced a writing brush and an ink-stone, saying, "Your grandfather wrote 'Jiwon' (Aim High–Tr.) and your father wrote 'Liberation of Korea' with this brush; what will you write?"

After a brief period of thought, Kim Jong Il wrote on a sheet of paper: "Long Live General Kim Il Sung!" His great-grandfather was delighted. He said that his great-grandson was a true descendant of Mangyongdae.

Kim Jong Il was unusual in his abilities of observing, discerning and analyzing things.

In his young days, with sincere and careful observation, he learned why hens hold their beaks up after pecking at water and why there are no black flowers. One year, on the night of August 15 by the lunar calendar, he was watching the moon. Someone told him that according to a legend, on the moon there is a cinnamon tree under which a rabbit is pounding something in a mortar. Remembering that a plane seems to grow smaller as it flies higher, and eventually disappears, Kim Jong Il refuted the legend by saying that a rabbit on the far-way moon cannot be seen.

His abilities of observing things and phenomena, and creative thinking were quite exceptional.

He found that when a clod of clay was added to another lump, it became one lump, not two, and it was the same case with drops of water falling on a flower petal–that when one was added to one, the sum was, in some cases, one, not two; he also learned by himself that in these cases the results were larger than the coefficients and when many things were added to become one, the result was a still larger one.

From his boyhood, he cherished high courage, lofty aim, ardent patriotism, warm humaneness and simple character.

He took loving care of the things of new Korea liberated by Kim Il Sung.

One summer, he saw some people on the Taedong River using explosives to catch fish, even killing fry. That evening he told his father what he had seen.

He was quite close to his friends. When he got anything nice, he shared it with his friends; he regarded his friends' pains and difficulties as his own, and helped them with sincerity.

One day in June 1948, an athletics meeting was held at his kindergarten, and he competed in a tricycle race. When another contestant fell to the ground, he stopped pedalling and helped him up; after that, he resumed the race. For this, he won the applause of the onlookers.

He cherished a simple character and led a frugal life. He went to school in simple clothes and rubber shoes with a wrapper to carry books, like the other pupils. When someone offered him special shoes or satchels, he declined them, saying that he liked living like the others. In winter, he never missed his duty of lighting the coal stove in the classroom.

His exceptional qualities were further cultivated by his parents' revolutionary education and influence.

Their meticulous edification instilled in his heart an ardent spirit of patriotism, love for his fellows, hatred of the enemy and a high sense of class awareness.

His mother's words that to support his father loyally meant the country's prosperity and the people's well-being, and her own example in this regard instilled a firm resolve in his heart to carry on the revolution. In particular, Kim Il Sung's tireless revolutionary activities for the country and people and his careful education further refined young Kim Jong Il's extraordinary traits.

Kim Jong Il developed his traits in the seething reality of the building of a new Korea.

Accompanying his parents to Pyongyang, Chongjin, Nampho, Sonbong County, Taedong County and several other towns, rural communities and fishermen's villages, he witnessed the people's enthusiasm and great efforts to build a new Korea, and learned about their ardent will to follow Kim Il Sung, unquenchable strength and burning patriotism. And as he saw adults working at the site of the Pothong River improvement project and on the Mirim Plain, he resolved to devote his all to the country and people.

On September 22, 1949, Kim Jong Il received a crushing blow when his mother Kim Jong Suk passed away at the age of 32.

Visiting her grave on Moran Hill, Kim Jong Il stood there for a long time engraving her life-long wishes in his heart.

Taking care of his younger sister in place of his mother from that time on, he made every possible effort to please his father.

2. LET US LEARN FOR KOREA

IN THE GRIM DAYS OF THE WAR

With the outbreak of the Fatherland Liberation War on June 25, 1950, Kim Jong Il took leave of his father and went to live with his younger sister.

The burning streets and villages instilled fierce hatred in him against the aggressors, and the images of the people and soldiers who were fighting

while singing the *Song of General Kim Il Sung* gave him the conviction of sure victory in the war.

He was reunited with his father in June 1952.

With Kim Il Sung he saw an air battle of the pilots of the Korean People's Army and visited an air corps and several places in North Phyongan Province. In those days he heard the story about the ten Party members in Ragwon[1] and saw the people stepping up wartime production on the home front day and night.

In those days, he showed constant concern for Kim Il Sung's health and safety.

Once, when Kim Il Sung's car came to a fork in the road, Kim Il Sung told the chauffeur to drive along a lane rather than the highway.

The lane was very rough. His aides who had scheduled his programme to follow the highway, hesitated.

Seeing this, Kim Jong Il said,

"Why are you hesitating? We must go the way chosen by the General. The way he goes is always right. Let the car go along the lane."

At this, the aides, repenting of their wavering for a few moments, let the car take the path.

After no more than a few minutes, enemy bombers appeared in the sky, and rained bombs on the highway where the car was supposed to pass. It was revealed later that the bombing that day was the result of a plot by spies on the payroll of the US imperialists.

From the end of June that year, he lived with his father at the Supreme Headquarters.

Kim Il Sung was quite busy at the Headquarters day and night. He received the report of the situation at the front several times a day, and issued orders; he took measures to strengthen the Party and stabilize the people's living conditions; on meeting scientists and technicians, he instructed them to draw up plans for reconstruction after victory in the war; on meeting writers and artists, he defined the direction of creating works and artistic activities for contributing to winning the war. All the problems arising in the activities of the Party, state, and in the front and rear were brought and solved here.

While burning the midnight oil sometimes before the operations map with his father, Kim Jong Il inquired into the situation at the front, and

learned bit by bit his father's outstanding art of military leadership, revolutionary optimism, spirit of facing challenges directly, unbreakable will and unexcelled dauntlessness. In the field of military planning he learned from his father how to frustrate the enemy's operations, how to attack, besiege and annihilate the enemy, and how to fight the enemy's aircraft and tanks. Accompanying his father, he visited the batteries of KPA artillery units and the construction sites of tunnels. He also walked with his father along the roads of Pyongyang and the countryside devastated by the enemy air raids.

Experiencing the war, in which the rear was as embattled as the front, he keenly realized that the victory in the war and future prosperity were ensured by his father's wise leadership.

He reflected the faith and will he learned in those days in the song *The Embrace of My Motherland*[2].

In mid-August 1952, Kim Jong Il left the Supreme Headquarters.

From that time on he devoted himself to studying. At the same time, he was deeply concerned about the safety of his father, who would be always at the front. Whenever he heard of a US air raid, he would think about his father.

One day, he wrote a letter to his father to the following effect:

"Dear father,

"How are you? I am sure that you must be going through a great deal of trouble to beat the Yankees in the Fatherland Liberation War.

"…

"I want to make a most important request to you father, and that is that you no longer regard yourself as just an individual but as the leader of the entire Korean people.

"...You should stay healthy, guard yourself against the enemy planes always taking care of yourself. This will mean happiness to the entire Korean people. From afar I hope you will take great care of your health.

June 1, 1953

Kim Jong Il"

On receiving this letter overflowing with his son's best wishes for his good health, Kim Il Sung was overjoyed, and carried the letter with him not only at the Supreme Headquarters but also on his visits to the front.

Later, Kim Jong Il wrote and composed the *Song of Best Wishes*[3] on the basis of the letter.

One day, 20 years later, he recollected the days of the Fatherland Liberation War with deep emotion, saying, "The Fatherland Liberation War was a historical period unforgettable in my life."

"GROUP FOR THE STUDY OF THE SHORT BIOGRAPHY OF GENERAL KIM IL SUNG"

In his primary school days Kim Jong Il took part in the organizational life of the Children's Union (CU) with unusual ardour, while studying zealously.

He always thought about what he could do to loyally support Kim Il Sung, who was working day and night, shouldering the heavy burden of the war. One day, he proposed organizing a "Group for the Study of the Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung." His proposal met with the unqualified support and approval of the teaching staff and pupils.

After making careful preparations, Kim Jong Il organized the "Group for the Study of the Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung" on February 10, 1953. At the meeting to organize the group, he pointed out the importance of studying the short biography, the purpose of organizing the group, and the tasks and direction of activities of the group.

The group met once a week, and its basic activities were reading and discussing the short biography.

In addition, Kim Jong Il frequently organized readers' meetings, and compiled an album of photos related to Kim Il Sung's revolutionary career.

He not only explained the revolutionary career of Kim Il Sung to his fellow pupils; with the group members he went among adults to do the same. To the adults, the group members explained Kim Il Sung's career with enthusiasm, and at important junctures sang revolutionary songs and recited poems, making their explanations more interesting. On hearing their explanations, an old man grasped Kim Jong Il's hands, and said with emotion that he felt a fresh strength soaring in him when he heard the stories about General Kim Il Sung in those difficult days, adding that the students were true sons and daughters of General Kim Il Sung.

Such a group was organized in every class of the school to greet

April 15, 1953, the 41st birthday of Kim Il Sung.

The "Group for the Study of the Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung" organized by Kim Jong Il was the first group for studying the revolutionary ideology, achievements and lofty virtues of Kim Il Sung.

While vigorously running the group, he advanced the slogan, "Let's learn for Korea!" so as to acquire more of living knowledge useful for the Korean revolution.

This slogan was later propagated across the country, and it now proves effective in ensuring that all students and children equip themselves with knowledge applicable in practice for the motherland and people.

ZEALOUS LEARNER

Graduating from Pyongyang Primary School No. 4 after the Fatherland Liberation War, Kim Jong Il entered Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 in September 1954.

On entering the middle school, he set himself the objective of reading books of various fields as well as those dealing with his own subjects.

One evening, Kim Il Sung asked his opinion about an important piece of news that day.

Kim Jong Il failed to give an answer, as he had made preparations for a general meeting of his branch of the CU and made a call on an ailing friend.

Kim Il Sung instructed him to study the current situation every day, though it was burdensome, saying, "As I had to make a revolution, I did not fail to read books in my middle school days, even forgoing meals in a cold room. I did so when I was engaged in underground struggle and when I was fighting in the mountains. As a man of drive can make a revolution, so a man of drive can learn."

Cherishing his words, Kim Jong Il wrote "Drive is the source of great creation" on a sheet of paper, and put it under the pane of glass on his desk so that he could always see it.

On seeing the motto a few days later, Kim Il Sung praised the boy, saying that it could serve as a guide for him, and that making a determination was important, but what was more important was to translate it into reality. From that time on, Kim Jong Il studied his school subjects with a burning passion and a high spirit of inquiry; at the same time, he read

sociopolitical, art and literary books about Korea and other countries, and various newspapers and periodicals, including *Rodong Sinmun*. He made a deep study of the international situation. In those days, his bookshelves were a veritable treasure-house of human knowledge.

He often said, "When I concentrate on reading, I don't notice the passage of time. Sometimes I feel anxious about the time flying by, while I still have many books to read. I don't feel satisfied with what I learn at school."

He not only did his best to find time for reading books; once he opened a book, he would read it so zealously that he did not notice who came to see him or how time passed. He remembered all that he read, delving into books in an analytical way, and jotting down his opinions in the margins.

He studied both the social and natural sciences in depth; and whenever he learned about a thing, he would experiment with it or prove its truth by himself before feeling satisfied. He disassembled a car engine to learn the principle of its operation, and disassembled a film projector to learn how the phenomena of reflection and refraction were applied.

3. STUDENT LEADER

VISIT TO REVOLUTIONARY BATTLE SITES ON MT. PAEKTU

Kim Jong Il made great efforts to ensure that students and young people learned from Kim Il Sung.

In his efforts to lead the CU members to study in depth the revolutionary career of Kim Il Sung, in April 1955 he organized a visit to Mangyongdae, Kim Il Sung's birthplace, and to Chilgol, Kim Il Sung's mother's old home, and on the basis of this experience proposed a visit to the revolutionary battle sites on Mt. Paektu.

Kim Jong Il told Kim Il Sung of his proposal.

Delighted with this proposal, Kim Il Sung encouraged him, saying, "A Korean proverb runs, The earliest man enjoys Five Blessings. It will be the same case with your first visit to the revolutionary battle sites. It is an untrodden path, but you should try it with determination."

Kim Jong Il soon organized an expedition, and discussed at a meeting of

the CU what the party should do during the visit. He said that the purpose of the expedition was to learn, while marching along the road Kim Il Sung traversed, how trying were the hardships and difficulties the anti-Japanese guerrillas under Kim Il Sung's leadership overcame to bring today's victory.

On June 5, 1956, the party left Pyongyang. It was the first group in Korea to visit the revolutionary battle sites on Mt. Paektu.

Arriving in Hyesan to a warm welcome from the students there, the group visited the grave of Ma Tong Hui[4], an anti-Japanese revolutionary martyr, and the battle site at Pochonbo. From Samjiyon they marched toward Rimyongsu, along the "Kapsan-Musan guard road." They finished their itinerary successfully. During the expedition, the students learned a lot.

At that time, Kim Jong Il thought that more revolutionary battle sites should be properly preserved, and that the area around Samjiyon in particular should be turned into an excellent place for education in the revolutionary traditions and that a regular expeditionary course should be set from Pochonbo to the summit of Mt. Paektu.

On his return, Kim Jong Il reported the activities of the expedition group to Kim Il Sung. He added that he regretted that the revolutionary battle sites had not been laid out properly, but remained in a natural state without guides to explain their history to visitors. In his memoirs, Kim Il Sung wrote:

"It was a significant event that in this situation Comrade Kim Jong Il decided to organize an expedition to the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt. Paektu area with his fellow students from Pyongyang Middle School No. 1."

Thanks to Kim Jong Il, visits to the revolutionary battle sites started in Korea, and resulted in the tracing of more revolutionary battle sites and other revolutionary sites, and laying them out properly, so as to educate Party members, working people and students in the revolutionary traditions by means of visible historical materials.

LET US ESTABLISH THE IDEOLOGICAL SYSTEM OF THE PARTY

Entering the mid-1950s, the Korean revolution was faced with great difficulties and trials. The Korean people, who were striving to fulfil the postwar Three-Year National Economic Plan ahead of schedule from the debris of war, had to execute a five-year plan to succeed this. But the

country lacked raw materials and funds. Externally, the imperialists and their stooges were attempting to ignite a new war, and the revisionists brought pressure to bear upon the Korean people; internally, the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists began to manoeuvre.

In this complex situation, Kim Jong Il made unflagging efforts to establish the Juche orientation and the ideological system of the Party among students.

In May 1956, there was a lecture at Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 on the prospects for the First Five-Year Plan put forward at the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea. As it was to deal with the First Five-Year Plan, the lecture attracted all the teaching staff and students.

The lecturer, the headmaster of the school, said, "We have a small territory, and there is an immediate shortage of food supplies because we have just suffered a war. So we need not build such large machines as trucks and tractors, but we have to build some light-industry factories and small factories. Whenever we need big machines, we can buy them in exchange for our abundant mineral resources, apples and squid."

Kim Jong Il's face became grave. What did the lecturer mean by saying that we need not build large-sized factories that would produce trucks, tractors and other machines? Did it not run in the final analysis against the basic line of economic construction, being opposed to the development of the machine-building industry, the core of heavy industry?

When the lecture was over, he rose from his seat, and said that he had something to say. He continued, "Your argument that we need not produce trucks and tractors totally runs counter to the idea of Marshal Kim Il Sung. He put it forward as the basic line of economic construction to give priority to the development of heavy industry while simultaneously developing light industry and agriculture. But you said we should import machines instead of making them ourselves. I ask you to give a correct explanation on this matter."

Perplexed at his reasoning and demand, the lecturer left the rostrum in haste, after mumbling a few words.

Kim Jong Il told the students that the day's lecture had been quite misguided and emphasized that they must examine all remarks to see if they agreed with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideas or not, and if not, they had to take a stand against people who utter erroneous remarks there and then.

Keenly realizing what the lecturer had been aiming at, the teaching staff and students felt their indignation soaring.

Kim Jong Il learned a serious lesson from that day's experience, and directed great efforts to ideological education among students so that they could establish the revolutionary habit of living and acting as the lines and policies of the Party required, and fight without compromise against all manner of erroneous ideological elements that ran counter to the Party's lines and policies.

Establishment of the thoroughgoing ideological system of the Party, a fundamental issue for ensuring the dominance of Kim Il Sung's ideology and leadership in the revolution and construction, was all the more important and urgent in view of the schemes of the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists.

At the Plenary Meeting of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea held in August 1956 Kim Il Sung took decisive measures for getting rid of the deep-rooted factions in the Party, and at the Party Conference held in March 1958 reviewed the inner-Party efforts for wiping away the remnants of factions, and advanced tasks for strengthening the unity and cohesion of the Party.

In enthusiastic response to this policy, Kim Jong Il strove to establish the ideological system of the Party among the students.

At the general meeting of the school committee of the Democratic Youth League (DYL) held on September 16, 1958, he made a speech, titled *On Some Tasks for Establishing the Ideological System of the Party among the DYL members.*

In this speech, he advanced the slogan "Young people, thoroughly establish the ideological system of the Party!" and pointed out the essence of the ideological system of the Party and the necessity for establishing the system.

In those days, many people had an incorrect understanding of this system; they thought ambiguously that it was an ideological system of the working class. At this time, Kim Jong Il said that the ideological system of the Party was not an abstract conception. He pointed out that it was a system embodying Kim Il Sung's ideas, clarifying the essence of the system. From this time on, all the activities of the DYL organization of the school were directed at

establishing the ideological system of the Party among the students.

Kim Jong Il performed this work in close combination with establishing the Juche orientation in study and practice.

On the basis of a deep study of Kim Il Sung's work, *On Eliminating Dogmatism and Formalism and Establishing Juche in Ideological Work,* he paid primary attention to studying the policies of the Workers' Party of Korea, the revolutionary traditions and the history of Korea, and at the same time rejected categorically the tendency to learn or introduce the things of other countries in a dogmatic way.

At the DYL and CU meetings, he emphasized the need to establish the Juche orientation, led his conversations with his friends in this direction, and ensured that it was made a yardstick for assessing study results.

Realizing the importance of education in the revolutionary traditions in establishing the ideological system of the Party, he proposed laying out a "Room for Studying the History of the Workers' Party of Korea" to mark Kim Il Sung's 47th birthday. He obtained scores of photographs to be displayed in the room, together with several volumes of materials.

Thus marking Kim Il Sung's 47th birthday, April 15, 1959, the study room was laid out. There was a plaster bust of Kim Il Sung in the bright, cosy room.

Saying that the laying out of the study room was a significant success in the effort to establish the ideological system of the Party, Kim Jong Il encouraged the students to study Kim Il Sung's revolutionary career zealously, with the room as a base.

His energetic activities brought about a new turn in the ideological life of the students, and established a firm ideological system of the Party among them.

BREATHING NEW LIFE INTO THE WORK OF THE DYL

Kim Jong Il joined the DYL in December 1956. On September 1, 1957, entering the higher course of Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 (later named Namsan Higher Middle School) he was elected vice-chairman of the DYL committee of the school. The chairman was a teacher.

Those days were a period marking a great turning point, when the

socialist transformation of the relations of production was in the stage of completion, and the grand Chollima advance started in all fields of socialist construction. It was also a historical period when the struggle for unity and cohesion in the Party was being strengthened, with the abolition of the remains of factions.

By applying Kim Il Sung's idea of the youth movement, as demanded by the developing revolution that had entered a new stage, Kim Jong Il briskly conducted the work with the youth and students.

Saying that the duty of the DYL organization of the school was to train all its members as revolutionaries faithful to the Party and leader, and as reliable, knowledgeable and capable builders of socialism, Kim Jong Il set ideological education among them and guidance of their organizational life, their studies and CU work as important tasks of the organization.

While paying priority attention to ideological education among them, he channelled great efforts into achieving principled and comradely unity among them.

He addressed them in the following vein: For an undertaking to be successful, those participating in it must be of one accord. If a family is to be harmonious, all the family members must agree with each other. Likewise, if the work of the DYL organization is to be successful, its members must be united with one mind.

In particular, he stressed that for unity to be possible between comrades based on principle, comradeship should run deep between them, and they should treasure this feeling. He continued: However, one must not overlook one's comrade's faults or shield him simply because he is on intimate terms with him. This can never be genuine comradeship. The youth that live in the era of revolution ought to treasure only revolutionary comradeship and recognize only the relationship between comrades beneficial to the organization and collective, and to the revolution.

Kim Jong Il's answers to problems of principle, such as on which principle the unity and cohesion of the ranks of the DYL should be achieved, what revolutionary comradeship meant and how it should be displayed, and what the view of and stand on criticism should be, served as an important guideline for rectifying the essential shortcomings revealed in those days among the DYL members in their

organizational life and for improving the work of the DYL.

The important tasks facing the DYL at that time were to lead its members so that they cherished the honour of being DYL members, kept their membership cards with good care, and participated in organizational and ideological life voluntarily.

To this end, Kim Jong Il organized various activities, including a visit to the Victorious Fatherland Liberation War Museum, where blood-stained DYL membership cards of war heroes were displayed.

As they learned how courageously the heores Ri Su Bok and Pak Won Jin[5] fought during the war with their DYL membership cards stained with their blood, the DYL members were deeply impressed, and made a firm determination to devote their all to their country and their people, cherishing the dignity and honour of being DYL members.

While engaging in DYL work, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to the work of the CU. He ensured that excellent DYL members of senior grades were assigned as assistant instructors to the CU sub-branches to help the instructors in their work. This proved to be an effective system for guiding the extracurricular activities of the CU members.

Kim Jong Il took an active part in labour for rebuilding the capital city of Pyongyang and socialist construction with his fellow students, and always stood in the van in this work.

With the students of Pyongyang Middle School No. 1, he participated in the production of structural parts for the building of apartment houses from early May to mid-June 1958. He mixed mortar, and carried materials on his own shoulders. Sometimes he would jump on trucks carrying cement, covering the cement from rain with his clothes; at other times he would fill a water tank by carrying water at night from the Taedong River scores of metres away for the next day's work. Afterwards, he went to the construction sites of the Students and Children's Palace and embankment for the Taedong River leading the young people and students for the construction of the capital city. His efforts moved the people deeply.

Through visits to the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Works and other factories and enterprises, and after-school activities like the activities of the greenery guard and sanitary guard, he accumulated valuable experiences.

4. TRAINING HIMSELF AS SUCCESSOR TO THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF JUCHE

O KOREA, I WILL ADD GLORY TO THEE

Kim Jong Il entered Kim Il Sung University on September 1, 1960, taking the course of political economy in the faculty of economics.

On his first day at the university, he climbed Ryongnam Hill, on which the university stands, and recited a poem he had composed, titled *O Korea, I Will Add Glory to Thee,* that expressed his noble aim to carry forward and consummate the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by Kim Il Sung.

As I stand on Ryongnam Hill at sunrise,
The land of 3,000 *ri* greets my eyes.
Learning the leader's great idea,
I will be the master of the revolution on this land, Korea.
O Korea, I will add glory to thee.

On the road of Juche I will be firm and steady
Under the guidance of the great leader.
Braving the raging waves and storms,
I will lead Korea into the future.
O Korea, I will make thee famous.

I will go on for ever with the cause of the sun
That shines over the whole world.
I will bring about the era of communism
When the red glow of Juche will cover the earth.
O Korea, my Korea!

To loyally support Kim Il Sung's great idea in Korea, not in another country, was an unshakable article of faith Kim Jong Il cherished in his early years.

In January 1959, he visited a university in another country. The local

official who was guiding him invited him to study at that university after graduating from higher middle school. As a matter of fact, many students from foreign countries were studying at that university at that time. A large number of them were children of heads of state.

Kim Jong Il answered, "Our country has the excellent Kim Il Sung University. I will study at Kim Il Sung University."

In the early 1930s, when Kim Il Sung was conducting revolutionary activities in a wide area after being released from Jilin prison, the Comintern asked him to study at the communist university in Moscow run by the organization. With the view that he could learn Marxism-Leninism from books, but could not become a people's revolutionary if he took leave of his fellow Koreans, he stayed with his compatriots.

Following the noble example of Kim Il Sung who was always among the people, regarding "The people are my God" as his maxim, Kim Jong Il decided to study at Kim Il Sung University in Korea, not in the large university in the foreign country.

Underlying his decision to study at Kim Il Sung University was his special intention to acquire Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea in a comprehensive way in his university days. He believed that Kim Il Sung's idea was the only correct idea and guide for the Korean revolution.

In his early days, when he was pioneering the revolutionary cause of Juche, Kim Il Sung had to frustrate various schemes hatched by enemies at home and abroad, and experience bitter and painful trials.

Trials and difficulties that cropped up yesterday might crop up also today and tomorrow as well as in the distant future.

In anticipation of the trials and difficulties that might lie in the way of the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of Juche, Kim Jong Il made up his mind to lead the Korean revolution into the bright future along the road indicated by the Juche idea, braving all the raging storms and waves that might challenge him.

CREATIVE WAY OF STUDYING

On the day he entered the university, he told the officials that his determination to learn Kim Il Sung's great idea to lead the revolution into the future had grown firmer now that he had become a student of the highest

institute of learning in Korea, and said, "I am going to make my university days a worthwhile period, learning the revolutionary ideology of the leader in greater depth and making preparations for carrying forward the Korean revolution."

Setting the high goal and noble ideal for his university days of scaling the summits of modern science and the knowledge mankind had created, he channelled his creative thinking and enthusiasm into scientific exploration.

He was attentive at every lecture, during which he learned the concepts, laws and scientific principles of things and phenomena, accumulating systematized knowledge. When he attended lectures or studied by himself, he always delved into the essence of the problems, asking such questions as "why?" "how?" and "the result?" By repeated creative thinking and research in this way he grasped the scientific truths. In his notebooks he would write down the main points of the subjects, and jot down his feelings or opinions in the margins.

He was opposed to quotation-mongering and roting methods of learning; he read all kinds of reference books and explored the essence of matters so as to steadily widen the scope of his knowledge.

At the examinations held every semester and year, he expressed his own views of the questions concerned.

The examination on the history of the international labour movement dealt with the cause of the disintegration of the Second International. He did not confine himself to what the lectures on this subject had pointed out–that it was because that revisionists and turncoats like Bernstein and Kautsky had gone over to the side of the bourgeoisie–he added that another major reason was that it had failed to carry forward the ideology of Marx and Engels. While explaining the issues of the state and revolution, he went beyond the contents of the lectures that had defined the forms of working-class power as the Commune and Soviet; he logically proved, referring to the motive force of the revolution, that the form of people's government was also a form of power led by the working class.

Kim Jong Il pointed out that poverty of thought resulted in poverty of creation, and that intellectual activities devoid of creation were meaningless. The products of his creative thinking and exploration appeared even more clearly during seminars and in his theses.

During seminars and when talking with lecturers on academic issues, he

developed what the lecturers had dealt with and expressed his views on the basis of his reading of Kim Il Sung's works and the Marxist-Leninist classics. Whenever an issue was raised, he set the point of argument in a fresh way, and explained its content in an original way.

Moreover, he led the other students to establish the Juche orientation in studying so as to train them to be revolutionary activists equipped with a thoroughgoing revolutionary outlook on the world and Juche-orientated view and stand.

The following exchange took place during a lecture on Korean history held in October 1960.

A student said, "The classics view the characteristic of a nation as the community of its psychological character expressed in the communities of language, region of habitation, economic life and cultural life. They continue that if one of the four communities is lacking, a nation cannot be called such. Then how should we view our compatriots abroad?"

His point was that the Korean compatriots abroad could not be called members of the Korean nation as far as the classics were concerned.

Hearing this, Kim Jong Il was convinced that the blind worship of the classics among the students must be eliminated.

Saying that the classics had been written in the circumstances of the corresponding historical period, Kim Jong Il stressed that they could not give correct answers to the problems arising in the revolution and construction in the present day and, therefore, the answer to the question with regard to a nation should be found in Kim Il Sung's works. He continued, "The major features of a nation are the communities of blood, language and region of habitation, and the communities of blood and language are the most important features that characterize a nation."

He went on to explain that a nation is a solid collective of people of the same blood and language. A people cannot be called one nation even though they live in the same territory if they are not of the same blood and language. The community of the area of habitation is also an important feature of a nation. In the course of living in the same territory for many years, people form a solid collective of the same blood and language. But for this or that reason, a nation can live in different territories or different nations can live in one territory.

In this way, Kim Jong Il proved logically that the Koreans who live

abroad were also members of the Korean nation.

Kim Jong Il established a special way of studying first Kim Il Sung's works.

He set a clear-cut objective to abstract in the first and second years all the works contained in *Kim Il Sung's Selected Works,* and in the third and fourth years to study the abstracts in breadth and depth once again in combination with the studying of his major, and set an example in this regard.

He constantly paid deep attention to the other students' study habits, and at the same time to the contents of education so as to see to it that all the problems arising in education were solved from a Juche-orientated standpoint.

He thought that, first of all, education in social sciences like political economy and philosophy should be improved steadily in the direction of getting rid of the dogmatic attitude toward the preceding theories, explaining and proving in depth the correctness and viability of the Party's policies advanced by Kim Il Sung, generalizing and systematizing theoretically the successes and experiences achieved in the socialist revolution and construction in Korea, and solving the theoretical and practical problems for the period immediately ahead.

He also felt the need to eliminate worship of big countries and dogmatism in the teaching of history, and explain Korean history from a Juche-orientated angle.

In the past, the materials on history related that Silla had achieved the unification of the three kingdoms of Korea by annexing Koguryo and Paekje. Proceeding from this, historical circles had claimed that Silla played a great role in the development of Korea's history and explained its history of around the 7th century by centring on Silla, calling Later Silla "Unified Silla."

In October 1960, Kim Jong Il presented a project, titled *On Reexamining the Issue of the Unification of the Three Kingdoms,* in which he expressed his creative view that contradicted the preceding theory.

On the basis of analyzing the materials on Korea's history of those days, he explained the matter in this way:

Even though it overcame Paekje and Koguryo in collusion with foreign aggressors, Silla failed to establish a unified sovereign state in Korea. After the ruin of the other two states, Silla occupied only the territory south of the

Taedong River. In the former territory of Koguryo north of the river a state called Palhae was set up, succeeding Koguryo. In fact, it existed for over 200 years. The fact that two different sovereign states–Palhae and Silla– existed on the former territory of Koguryo, Paekje and Silla shows that it cannot be said that the three kingdoms were unified by Silla. It was Koguryo that had cherished the ambition for unification, and made consistent efforts to this end. This legacy fell to Koryo, which was established in the early 10th century. The name Koryo descended from Koguryo.

He continued the project, writing, "We must re-examine the issue of the unification of the three kingdoms by Silla on the basis of the objective historical facts."

He pointed out that the view of the rulers of Silla on unification was reactionary, in that it was based on jingoism, and the wars it fought with Koguryo and Paekje were aggressive ones. In fact, he said, the rulers of Silla, like Kim Chun Chu and Kim Yu Sin, who directed these wars must be judged according to the character of those wars. Therefore, proceeding from the historical fact that Silla failed to unify the three kingdoms, the term Unified Silla must also be changed. The history of Korea's Middle Ages that had been distorted must be clarified correctly from a Juche-orientated standpoint.

His fresh examination of the issue of unification of the three kingdoms and clarification of the Juche-orientated stand on history that had been distorted was a scientific discovery.

In this way, he overcame worship of big countries and dogmatism in studying by dint of creative thinking and zealous exploration, and established the Juche orientation.

TRAINING STUDENTS TO BE REVOLUTIONARIES LOYAL TO THE PARTY AND THE LEADER

Kim Jong Il paid deep attention to the political and ideological edification and organizational life of the other students, so as to train them to be communist revolutionaries loyal to the Party and the leader.

He directed his primary concern to leading the students to cherish loyalty to Kim Il Sung as their revolutionary faith.

On the publication of the statement of the conference of Communist and Workers' Parties held in Moscow in 1960, when the modern revisionists

were kicking up a fuss about "personality cults," Kim Jong Il talked with the lecturers and students. In the talk he explained that the leader of the working class is not simply an individual but the top brain of the revolution and centre of unity.

He ensured that the education in the revolutionary traditions was carried out in various forms and by various methods, so that all students could learn about Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities in depth. He organized reading sessions and symposiums on the reminiscences of the veterans of the anti-Japanese revolution like *To Study Is the Main Task of Revolutionaries, When a Man is Determined, He Can Perform Any Task, A United Effort* and *One Bowl of Parched Rice Flour,* in combination with the prevailing situation. This helped the students establish proper study habits and display to a high degree the spirit of surmounting difficulties, and the spirit of collectivism and revolutionary comradeship.

He also put efforts into class education among the students so that they could firmly maintain the working-class stand in any adversity and always live in a revolutionary way.

On July 22, 1961, Kim Jong Il became a member of the Workers' Party of Korea.

From the first day of his Party life he led the Party members through his practical example to strengthen their ideological and volitional unity and cohesion based on Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea.

Later, Kim Jong Il's class twice became a Chollima class by intensifying their comradely unity and bringing about a fresh upsurge in studying and in organizational life. *Minju Chongnyon,* dated February 5, 1963, reported this by carrying a special page-long article, titled, *A Communist Student Collective of Our Times,* with a photo of the class with Kim Jong Il among them.

IN THE THICK OF REALITY

Kim Jong Il was deeply concerned with training the other students to be able activists tempered in socialist construction and prepared both theoretically and for practice, and set an example in this regard.

From the end of April to early May 1961, Kim Jong Il engaged in work practice at the Pyongyang Textile Machinery Factory.

The purpose of this was to consolidate in practice the knowledge learned from the course on technical engineering, acquire the technical skills with which to operate more than one machine tool, like a lathe or a drill press, and learn the method of factory management and the revolutionary spirit of the working class.

Engaged in labour in those days, Kim Jong Il accumulated precious experiences.

Assisting the operator of lathe No. 26 in her work, he encouraged her to initiate a movement for model machines. The movement started in this way.

The movement heightened the sense of responsibility in maintaining machines among the workers, and brought about a great change in their way of labour. This movement later developed into the "model machine movement of loyalty for emulating lathe No. 26."

He was at ease among the workers, took part in the public cultural activities organized in the factory and visited the workers' dormitory.

From mid-May to early June that year, Kim Jong Il participated in the project for widening the road between Wasan-dong and Ryongsong in Pyongyang.

On the morning of the first day of the project Kim Jong Il came to the site and was the first to take up a spade to dig earth with his fellow students.

In the early days of the project, the students carried earth dug from the side of a hill to a swamp, and dug drainage ditches.

Kim Jong Il himself participated in the most difficult part of the work hammering rocks and carrying earth on a straw mat slung from a pole shouldered by two men.

When his workmates tried to lighten his load, he said that such hard labour would induce them to invent machines so as to free the working people from toilsome labour. He would run without a rest carrying a load of earth heavy enough to bend the shoulder pole. His sunburnt shoulders peeled several times.

An official of the university who visited his home one day told Kim Il Sung that he was worried because Kim Jong Il's shoulders had become swollen and the skin had peeled several times.

Casting an approving glance at his son, Kim Il Sung quoted the proverb about experience of hardship in one's youth not being able to be bartered for gold, encouraging him to take advantage of this trying experience.

Taking this advice deeply to heart, Kim Jong Il led the students to

achieve great feats of labour, setting a personal example all the while.

During the period of the construction, he paid close attention to on-site political work, encouragement of the workers to achieve feats of labour and mass cultural work. He ensured that news boards, the site newspaper and radio, and other means of information and mobilization all played their roles in giving an impetus to the zeal of the student builders and inspired them to ever-greater labour feats.

He commuted to the construction site by public bus crowded with passengers, took part in recreation parties of the workers during breaks and took lunch with them. One night, during a heavy downpour, he came to the construction site with raincoats for the soldiers who had been helping the students.

One day, an old woman was collecting scraps of coal buried at the construction site where houses had once stood.

Kim Jong Il, who was looking round the construction site at that time, approached her, greeted her kindly and asked her whether she had run out of coal. She answered that she could not bear to see the precious coal go to waste in the ground. Saying that she was right, and he had to learn from the people in this matter, too, he shovelled coal into her bucket. On learning later who he was, she was aghast that he had done such a menial task for her.

He said, "I am also a son of the working people."

He added that he was inspired by her determination not to let the coal go to waste, even though it was only a small amount.

The road widening project was completed in 20 days.

The days of factory work and the road widening project were a meaningful period when he built up practical skills, and demonstrated his revolutionary drive and lofty trait of being as one with the people.

5. IDEOLOGICAL AND THEORETICAL ACTIVITIES

THE THEORY OF THE LEADER

In his university days Kim Jong Il conducted ideological and theoretical activities with tireless thinking and exploration, so as to give ideological and theoretical answers to the questions urgently raised by the times and

revolution. In this way he produced valuable ideas and theories for carrying forward and consummating the revolutionary cause of Juche.

His wide-ranging and deep-going ideological and theoretical activities encompassed various aspects of the revolution and construction, including political, economic, cultural, military and international affairs. From the academic point of view, they covered political economy, philosophy, the theory of the Party, State and army building, history, linguistics and even the realm of natural sciences such as physics.

The acme of his ideological and theoretical activities was his development of the theory of the leader, which clarified the leader's role and position in the revolutionary struggle of the working class. In those days the modern revisionists were scheming viciously to sling mud at the authority and achievements of the working-class leaders on the pretext of overcoming the "personality cult." In this situation, establishing an understanding of the role of the leader was an urgent and important theoretical and practical task.

In order to give an answer to this question, Kim Jong Il studied in detail how it had been raised and discussed in the communist movement for the previous 100 years.

The history of the international communist movement, spanning over 100 years, showed that no one had so far given a correct answer to the question of the relationship between the individual, the leader and the masses. In this situation, obtaining a correct understanding of the position and role of the leader in the revolutionary struggle was of great importance, as it had a bearing on the destiny of the revolution. It was a focus of the people's concern.

Resolved to solve this grave and urgent question in person, Kim Jong Il engaged in energetic ideological and theoretical study, and thus established a scientific theory of the leader.

Studying the position working-class leader occupies in the revolutionary struggle, Kim Jong Il stated the starting point of this issue in a fresh way.

In a talk he gave on December 5, 1960, titled *The Working-class Leader Is Not an Individual,* he pointed out that discussing the issue of the leader from the standpoint that any one can become a leader, as a leader is an individual, was quite wrong from the theoretical point of view and very harmful in practice.

He said that it was fundamentally wrong to treat the working-class

leader on a par with the pioneers who lived in the period prior to the revolutionary struggle of the working class. He theoretically proved that the pioneers had been representatives of certain classes and strata or personages who had stood in the van of a movement, and therefore they had been individuals, but the leaders of the working class and other working masses were not individuals but the supreme personification of their demands, will and brains. He concluded that the masses that were not led by an outstanding leader were like physical body devoid of a brain, and that as a living organism is inconceivable separated from its brain, so the masses cannot be compared with the leader. Clarified thus was the deep meaning that the leader constitutes the nucleus of the revolution, and that the greatness of a country and nation depends on the greatness of their leader. This idea was condensed in his aphorism, "Hoping for victory in a revolution without a leader is just like looking for flowers without the sun."

To proceed, Kim Jong Il gave an elucidation of the role the leader plays in the revolutionary struggle of the working class.

In a talk he gave on June 12, 1963, titled *The Working-class Leader Plays a Decisive Role in the Revolutionary Struggle,* and other talks, he gave a detailed analysis of the activities of Marx and Engels, who ushered in the era of the international communist movement, the role of Lenin, who led the revolutionary struggle of the Russian working class, and the achievements of Kim Il Sung, who was leading the Korean revolution to victory, and concluded that the working-class leader plays a decisive role in the revolutionary struggle.

He said:

"By leading the masses, the leader plays a decisive role in the revolutionary struggle. He brings awareness to the masses by arming them with the revolutionary ideology, makes them organized by rallying them behind revolutionary organizations, and leads them to victory through his impeccable strategic and tactical leadership."

He stressed that the leader is the father of the people, as he trains them to be masters of the revolution and pioneers of their own destiny by bringing awareness to them and organizing them.

He also made clear the stand the masses should take towards their leader.

He said that loyalty to the leader is a unique, noble trait of the working

class and other working masses, adding that the masses must respect and trust their leader and cast in their lot with him.

The leader is not an individual but the brain of the masses, and so the term "personality cult" does not stand to reason; as a living organism protects its own brain, the communists and people must defend their leader from the attack and slander of the class enemies of all hues–this was an unshakable stand and creed of Kim Jong Il.

He also mentioned the issue of the leader's successor, saying that the issue should be solved correctly in order to develop over generations the revolutionary cause pioneered by the leader.

He pointed out that the modern revisionism that had appeared in the ruling party of a certain socialist country originated in the fact that a traitor to the revolution had seized the supreme authority of the party and State after the death of its leader, and enforced revisionism, saying that if a party and government fall into the hands of traitors to the revolution, the line of the revolution will be severed, and the working-class party will lose its class character and become degenerate. He continued that this experience testified to the truth that a correct solution of the issue of successor is a fundamental issue in carrying forward the revolution.

The creation of the theory of the leader and emphasis on the importance of the issue of his successor is the quintessence of Kim Jong Il's ideological and theoretical activities in his university days.

STUDYING ECONOMIC THEORIES AND PHILOSOPHY IN A JUCHE-ORIENTATED WAY

Specializing in political economy, Kim Jong Il studied ideological theories in depth so as to develop economics into Juche-orientated economic theories.

In those days, the study of economics failed to systematize the scientific and theoretical issues on the basis of the policies of the Workers' Party of Korea and the real situation of Korea. It was from this failure that, with regard to the issue of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution and the period of transition, the subject of political economy dealt with the issue of agrarian reform and the nationalization of key industries only after mentioning the issue of the inevitability of the transition from capitalism to

socialism and proletarian dictatorship. When dealing with the issue of industrialization and agricultural cooperativization, it taught that industrialization should precede agricultural cooperativization. This corresponded with the preceding theories that had been developed taking into consideration the countries that carried out the socialist revolution without going through the stage of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution; applied here was the materialistic view of history, a principle of which states that the productive forces develop first, and in conformity with it the relations of production develop.

After studying this with thoroughgoing Juche-orientated insight, Kim Jong Il met the teachers of the faculty of economics and asked them if the Korean revolution should be the central point in the study of political economy. He said that, as Kim Il Sung had remarked, the private peasant economy could be fully cooperativized if agricultural cooperativization was their vital need and the revolutionary forces capable of carrying it out were available, even though industrialization had not been realized and the level of technological development was comparably low. He reasoned that Kim Il Sung's original theory of restructuring the form of the rural economy prior to technological transformation was a universal truth.

Kim Il Sung's idea of regarding the peasants' vital need and revolutionary forces, rather than productive forces, as the decisive factors for cooperativization was based on the principles of the Juche idea that develop the theories of social revolution with man at the centre.

At about the same time, Kim Il Sung, guiding an enlarged meeting of the Party committee of the Taean Electric Appliance Factory, instructed that a textbook on political economy should be compiled on the basis of the mass line.

Informed of his instruction, teachers and scholars racked their brains to clarify what political economy based on the mass line should be, as they had heard about it for the first time.

Learning of this situation, Kim Jong Il talked one day with leading teachers on this issue.

He said that the economic theories based on the mass line were those embodying the demands of the mass line of the Workers' Party of Korea, thus bringing the essence of this issue to light. He continued that an important feature of these theories was the maintenance of the stand of

advocating the interests of the masses in economic construction and reliance on the method of stimulating the strength and wisdom of the masses in executing the economic tasks.

He applied the Juche-orientated economic theories to his graduation thesis, the summing-up of his fields of study and his ideological and theoretical activities in his university days.

It was considered in those days that developing correctly the main categories and principles treated at lectures and proving them by means of some data obtained in the field was enough for a university graduation thesis. Thus, his teachers advised Kim Jong Il to write his thesis by dealing with the contents of the laws of the socialist economy and proving their validity.

Kim Jong Il said that he could discuss the issue of building an independent national economy or the issue of the basic line of economic construction in his thesis, but as these issues had already been dealt with by many people from various angles, he would clarify the essence and basic idea of Kim Il Sung's speech at the Changsong Enlarged Meeting and the position and role of the county in socialist construction.

Setting the theme of his thesis in this way, he consulted documents and gathered data. He made a systematic study of Kim Il Sung's works and remarks on the issues of the countryside and local industry, gathered data from various regions and made an analysis of the data gathered by the central economic organs. At the same time, he studied the theories expounded by the preceding authors of classics and analyzed the agricultural policies of the other socialist countries.

He put forth hypotheses and analyses by placing the county at the strategic position of solving all problems in socialist and communist construction in the countryside, and consistently thought about the methods for improving the masses' position and role in socialist construction.

After profound study and energetic exploration, he completed his graduation thesis, titled *The Place and Role of the County in the Building of Socialism,* and presented it on March 18, 1964.

The structure of the thesis is as follows:

1. The necessity for defining regional centres in the building of socialism

2. The county as an all-embracing unit in the development of the local economy

3. The county as a base for the economic link between towns and rural areas

Pointing out the necessity for defining regional centres in socialist construction in the first part, he wrote:

"For the successful realization of the unified and comprehensive guidance of the Party and State over the countryside, it is necessary to define certain regional centres so as to work by relying on them. This is related to the characteristics of the countryside."

He wrote that the regional centre should be a unit favourable for transmitting the policies of the Party and State directly to the rural areas and for guiding and developing agricultural production and other spheres of the local economy and culture, and a point linking towns and rural areas in all fields of politics, the economy and culture. He proved from various angles that the county was such a unit in Korea.

In the second part he clarified the position of the county as an all-embracing unit in the development of the local economy and the methods for improving its role as such. In the third part he proved that the county was not only an all-embracing unit for the development of the local economy but also a base for effecting an economic link between towns and rural areas, and advanced concrete methods for enhancing its role as such.

Pointing out that the role of the county as a regional centre would become greater, he added that the county would continue in the distant future of socialism and communism to play the role of an economic base linking towns and rural areas and as a supply base for the countryside.

While specializing in political economy, Kim Jong Il also studied philosophy in depth.

In those days the lectures on philosophy treated philosophy as a discipline that provides a general understanding of the world and studies the most general laws of nature, society and the development of human thought. For this reason, the mission of philosophy had not been defined in a proper way.

Kim Jong Il thought that this was the very problem.

He read philosophy books of all ages and analyzed the philosophical views of various schools. In the course of this, he confirmed that philosophy had existed for a long time without scientifically defining its mission and objective.

In the 19th century, the founders of Marxism presented the issue of the relationship between material and consciousness as the fundamental task of philosophy for the first time, and studied the most general law-governed features of nature, society and the development of human thought, defining philosophy as a discipline that provides a general understanding of the world.

Marx said that the mission of philosophy was to transform the world, clarifying for the first time that philosophy must serve the revolutionary practice of the working class. This constituted a correct elucidation of the mission of philosophy in its relationship to practice.

At the same time as studying and analyzing the legacy of philosophy, Kim Jong Il studied Kim Il Sung's philosophical ideology systematically, in the course of which he discovered that the mission of philosophy is to indicate the way for carving out man's destiny.

He affirmed that the performer of cognitive and practical activities is man, and these activities are conducted for the realization of his concrete objectives. He pointed out that these activities can be said to be performed in a proper way when they are performed with the objective of carving out man's destiny. He added that it would be more correct to say, in view of this fact, that the mission of philosophy is to light the way for carving out man's destiny than to say that it is to serve his practical activities.

His clarification of the mission of philosophy on the basis of in-depth study, analysis and summing-up of the legacy of human philosophy is an important contribution he made in his university days to the study and development of philosophy.

ANALYSIS OF MODERN IMPERIALISM AND REVISIONISM

Kim Jong Il directed efforts to clarifying modern imperialism.

He paid attention to two points in this regard.

One was the starting point of the study of imperialism. Studying imperialism in comparison with industrial capitalism in which free competition held sway, Lenin viewed monopoly as its economic basis, and called imperialism monopoly capitalism.

Kim Jong Il was attentive to the fact that contemporary imperialism was based not on simple monopoly but on state monopoly capitalism, in which monopolies and State power are closely interlinked.

The other point was the change that took place in the relations between the imperialist countries. Analyzing imperialism, centring on Germany and other imperialist countries in Western Europe, Lenin said that the basic relations between these countries were characterized by coordinate relations with sharp contradictions and conflicts.

In the light of the situation in which the imperialist countries were realigned under US imperialist leadership after the Second World War, in opposition to the world revolutionary forces, Kim Jong Il, in his study of modern imperialism, put US imperialism at the centre, and considered imperialism in general as being reorganized in the form of a pyramid.

He talked with teachers and students on several occasions, expressing his feelings and opinions of the results of his study and information on current affairs. He said that a firm stand should be maintained against the US imperialist policy of nuclear blackmail, the collapse of the colonial system of imperialism was inevitable, anti-communism was an ideological weapon of imperialist aggression, and that US imperialism was the main culprit of aggression and war and a citadel of racism and colonialism. During seminars, he explained by means of concrete data and facts that aggression and plunder were parts of the unchangeable nature of imperialism.

On January 15, 1962, he published his treatise, titled *The Characteristics of Modern Imperialism and Its Aggressive Nature.*

In the treatise, analyzing the characteristics of imperialism in the political, economic and military aspects, he said:

"...Modern imperialism is imperialism which is based on State monopoly capitalism, not simple monopoly capitalism. It depends on new colonialism, not old colonialism. It has been realigned so as to be subordinated to US imperialism, not to exist in a coordinate relationship. It is quickly weakening and crumbling, and making its last frantic efforts, not growing in strength."

He noted that imperialism, from its inception, had resorted to aggression and plunder, but today's method of imperialist aggression had certain

differences from yesterday's, laying bare the doubling-dealing tactics of modern imperialism.

He pointed out that the modern revisionists were giving up the anti-imperialist struggle and revolution halfway, claiming that imperialism was no longer aggressive and had changed into "rational imperialism," and stressed that modern revisionist attempts to beautify imperialism and spread illusions about it must be frustrated.

Kim Jong Il also made a comprehensive analysis of the modern revisionism that had appeared in the international communist movement.

He frequently exchanged opinions with teachers and students about the origin of modern revisionism, its reactionary nature and harmfulness, the revolutionary stand maintained by the Workers' Party of Korea in its struggle against it, and other topics.

He explained by means of concrete facts that the danger of the modern revisionism that had appeared in the leadership of a big country that had carried out the revolution long ago, was that it not only had been forced on the Party members and working people of the country through organizational channels but had also laid a great obstacle in the way of the development of international relations. He said that this could be likened to the phenomenon in which a basketful of peaches rot completely after the peach on the top gets rotten.

With regard to the issue of the origin of modern imperialism, he said that those who yield to imperialists might appear so long as the surviving elements of the overthrown exploitative class manoeuvre and the remnants of the outmoded ideas linger in the minds of the people after the establishment of the socialist system.

As for the mudslinging by modern imperialists at the authority of socialist leaders, he said that its reactionary nature was the negation of their leadership over the revolutionary struggle and construction work and laid bare the undisguised schemes to deny their leadership over politics, the economy, culture and other spheres.

For their profundity of analysis and power of persuasion, his remarks served as a precious ideological and theoretical guide to having a correct understanding of the most complicated and urgent international problems and becoming armed with the principled stand of the Workers' Party of Korea, which was opposed to revisionism.

6. ACCOMPANYING KIM IL SUNG ON FIELD GUIDANCE

Frequently accompanying Kim Il Sung on his field guidance to various parts of the country, Kim Jong Il helped him in his work, getting acquainted with Party work, the building of the economy and culture, and military work.

What crowned his efforts to help Kim Il Sung in his work were his activities in Changsong and Sakju in North Phyongan Province and in the area of Ryanggang Province.

In the latter days of July 1962, Kim Il Sung was making preparations in Changsong for a joint conference of local Party and economic officials so as to popularize across the country the experience of the mountainous Changsong County, which he had held up as a model unit for improving the local people's standard of living by developing the local economy.

Kim Jong Il went to Sakju County, a unit arranged for inspection by the participants in the conference, and acquainted himself with the actual situation of the county.

True to the policy of simultaneously developing centrally-run industry and locally-run industry Kim Il Sung advanced at the June 1958 Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee, the county was satisfying the local needs for daily necessities and foodstuffs by its own efforts, as it had built many locally-run factories like a textile mill and a maize-processing factory; it was also increasing agricultural production and improving the farmers' standard of living systematically by developing the rural economy in a multifaceted way as suited to the features of the mountainous region.

During the hottest days of the year, Kim Jong Il visited the Sakju Textile Mill, the maize-processing factory and the Township Agricultural Cooperative, and studied their production, the state of their equipment, the level of technical skill and standard of living of their employees, gathering and analyzing factual data. Visiting the maize-processing factory, he paid deep attention to the fact that the factory, in response to the instruction of Kim Il Sung to solve the problem of cooking oil by the regions themselves, had organized an oil workteam and raised the oil extraction rate to supply oil to the local inhabitants in a great quantity.

On the basis of several days of analysis of the economic situation of the county, Kim Jong Il wrote a treatise, titled *The Correctness of Our Party's Policy to Develop the Local Economy.* And he showed it to Kim Il Sung.

In the treatise he analyzed and proved with the help of materials that the experience of Sakju County showed that first, the Party's policy to increase production in local industry by motivating the local people and tapping the latent materials available in the localities was absolutely correct; second, it was reasonable to develop local industry with the county, a regional centre for political, economic and cultural construction, as a unit; and third, food for the local people and the raw materials for the local industry can be obtained by the localities themselves if stockbreeding and the production of vegetables and industrial crops are developed in conformity with the regional features simultaneously with grain production.

The treatise proved a great help to Kim Il Sung, who was making efforts to develop the local economy rapidly.

Kim Jong Il accompanied Kim Il Sung on his on-the-spot guidance to South Hamgyong Province and Ryanggang Province in the first half of August 1963. They visited Pukchong and Toksong counties in South Hamgyong Province.

In Phungsan County, Ryanggang Province, Kim Jong Il paid great attention to the diet of the people in the mountainous region. He visited the township general shop and inquired into the supplies of soya sauce and bean paste. He even had a taste of bean paste. He reported to Kim Il Sung that bean paste there was of low quality. Saying that improving the quality of soya sauce and bean paste was very important for improving the people's diet, Kim Il Sung took measures to improve the quality of products in the foodstuff factories.

After visiting the farms and major industrial areas in the mountainous province, Kim Jong Il climbed Mt. Paektu with Kim Il Sung in August 1963.

Enjoying the majestic view of the mountain, Kim Jong Il said that Mt. Paektu, which has been famous throughout history as the ancestral mountain of the Korean people, was now more famous as it was associated with the name and revolutionary achievements of Kim Il Sung.

Proceeding to Hyesan, he participated in the celebrations held in commemoration of the 18th anniversary of the national liberation, with Kim Il Sung's attendance.

Accompanying Kim Il Sung, he visited many other units across the country.

2

(APRIL 1964–JANUARY 1974)

1. STARTING TO WORK AT THE PARTY CENTRAL COMMITTEE

Kim Jong Il was posted to the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea in April 1964. He started working at his post from June 19 the same year.

Kim Jong Il regarded it as a noble mission and revolutionary duty to work near Kim Il Sung at the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, the General Staff of the Korean revolution.

On starting to work there, he addressed the officials to the following effect:

As I am to work at the Party Central Committee in support of Comrade Kim Il Sung's ideas, I feel quite moved. At the same time, I feel a greater sense of responsibility. The Workers' Party of Korea was founded and is led by Comrade Kim Il Sung. Its Central Committee is its General Staff that realizes Comrade Kim Il Sung's ideas and leadership over the entire Party and society. Let us become cornerstones, true Party workers, in the mission of building Comrade Kim Il Sung's Party.

In this way, Kim Jong Il's will to carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche true to Kim Il Sung's intention was absolute and firm.

Working on the Party Central Committee, he paid primary attention to defining the principal line of the Party's work and activities.

Defining the principal line of the Party's work was an urgent task raised by the situation of Party work and activities in those days. The situation in which the principal line was not clear in the Party work showed that the leadership role of the Party could not be enhanced unless the line was defined properly.

With a deep insight into this situation, Kim Jong Il clarified the essential nature of the Workers' Party of Korea, and gave a scientific definition of the principal line in its work.

He said:

"In order to develop our Party as the eternal party of Comrade Kim Il Sung, we must clearly define the principal line in Party work. The principal line in the Party's work and activities is to firmly establish Comrade Kim Il Sung's ideological system. This is a line our Party must hold fast to with all consistency in the whole period of its existence and activities. Therefore, all Party work and activities must be directed to establishing his ideological system, supporting him loyally and carrying out his instructions."

For the establishment of the principal line in Party work, Kim Jong Il ensured that the departments and officials in the Party Central Committee maintained a firm stand in supporting Kim Il Sung, performed their work with primary attention directed at carrying out Kim Il Sung's instructions, subordinating all types of their work to this, and set up a system by which they directed the work of their subordinate organizations of the Party, guided by Kim Il Sung's instructions.

He also saw to it that not only the departments of the Party Central Committee but also the organizations and officials at all levels of the Party followed the principal line in their work. In this way, the system of transmitting Kim Il Sung's instructions and taking measures for their implementation was established throughout the Party from this time.

His definition of the principal line in Party work laid a basis on which to conduct Party work in conformity with the ideas and intentions of Kim Il Sung, eliminate heterogeneous elements of all hues from the Party and step up establishing the monolithic ideological system of the Party.

2. FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE LINE OF SIMULTANEOUSLY CARRYING OUT ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION AND DEFENCE BUILDING

KINDLING THE FLAMES OF A GREAT REVOLUTIONARY UPSURGE

Stepping up economic construction and defence building presented itself as a very important task in the 1960s, due to the then complicated and tense situation.

To cope with the prevailing situation, Kim Il Sung again stressed, at the Party Conference held in October 1966, the need to adhere to the strategic line of promoting economic construction and defence building simultaneously, and at the 16th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Central Committee of the Party advanced the policy on bringing about a great revolutionary upsurge.

True to his intention, Kim Jong Il saw to it that innovations were made both in economic construction and defence building for a great revolutionary upsurge.

He ensured that all Party organizations inspired the Party members and other working people to the implementation of the Party's line and policy through efficient organizational and political work; at the same time, he visited major enterprises to kindle the flames of a great upsurge.

In company with Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il visited the Kangson Steel Plant in July 1967. He told the senior officials of the plant that Kim Il Sung had come to the plant to make the working class there take the lead again in the revolutionary upsurge, instructing them earnestly that they should continue to exalt the honour of the pioneer of the Chollima workteam movement[6] in the van of the revolutionary upsurge.

In August 1967 he visited the Ryongsong Machine Factory, and inspired the workers there to the great upsurge.

Watching the operation of the 3,000-ton press at the press workshop, he asked the officials how preparations for manufacturing a 6,000-ton press were proceeding, an important task Kim Il Sung had given the factory as it had the experience of making a 3,000-ton press.

After hearing their report, he instructed them to set about making the press, saying, "The working people of the Ryongsong Machine Factory are heroic as they have made an 8-metre turning lathe and a 3,000-ton press. They have great capability. Comrade Kim Il Sung assigns them the difficult tasks because he always trusts them. The factory should make a 6,000-ton press at the earliest date to live up to his expectations."

He visited many other factories, enterprises and rural communities across the country.

When guiding the industrial sector in those days, he led a drive to strengthen the independence of industry and promote technological restructuring by mechanizing production processes, and introducing semi-

automation and automation into the processes; he also brought the Taean work system to prove its worth.

In the rural communities, he ensured that the advantages of the new agricultural guidance system centred on the county cooperative farm management committee were demonstrated to the full by the intensification of technological guidance over agricultural production. He also led them to make innovations in agricultural production, develop the rural economy in a diverse way and promote technological revolution.

His wise leadership constituted a great contribution to bringing about a great upsurge in various sectors of the national economy, including industry and agriculture.

In the flames of the great revolutionary upsurge to make a fresh innovation in socialist economic construction, the historical task of socialist industrialization was executed, and Korea, a country that had been left behind as regards modern civilization and technology, was turned into a socialist industrial state.

TURNING THE WHOLE COUNTRY INTO AN IMPREGNABLE FORTRESS

Kim Jong Il energetically led the work of consolidating the defence capabilities of the country by carrying out the line of promoting economic construction and defence building simultaneously.

Paying primary attention to implementing the military line of self-reliant defence, he directed great efforts at developing the People's Army into revolutionary armed forces each member of which is a match for a hundred foes by turning the entire army into a cadre army and arming it with modern weaponry.

In order to implement the policy of turning the entire army into a cadre army, he consolidated the ranks of cadres of the People's Army, and ensured that soldiers were trained politically and ideologically.

He also led the work of intensifying military and technological training in the armed forces. He saw to it that the soldiers performed their military training by putting major emphasis on acquiring outstanding military skills, marksmanship and sturdy physique. He set clear goals for training for the soldiers of all branches of arms and services, as well as for specialists. Thus, all training was conducted on the basis of Korea's specific features, the

requirements of modern warfare and the experiences of the Fatherland Liberation War.

Visiting a unit of the air force of the Korean People's Army, Kim Jong Il instructed the officers to intensify training to get all pilots prepared for any mission in whatever unfavourable conditions. He met the deputy commander in charge of political affairs of a company of a KPA unit one day and taught him the role of the deputy commander in charge of political affairs of the company, saying that he was a career revolutionary, a political worker, who should make efforts to train the soldiers of his company into revolutionary soldiers of Kim Il Sung and render political support to the implementation of the military tasks facing the company, and that his voice should be heard clearly where the company soldiers were, along with the voice of the military commander.

Inspecting a coastal battery, he stressed that the role of coastal artillerymen was very important in maritime Korea, and the duty of the artillery company that was defending the passage to the inland area was all the more important. He also told them that they must annihilate the enemy on the sea should the enemy attempt a landing, as all passages to the inland area lead to Pyongyang, thus indicating to them concrete ways for frustrating the enemy's aggressive attempts in time.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to improving the weapons and equipment of the People's Army, leading the munitions industry so that it would produce powerful, high-tech weapons that conform with the specific features of Korea and the physical constitution of Koreans.

In order to execute the military line of self-reliant defence, he promoted the work of arming the whole nation and fortifying the whole country, thus establishing an all-people defence system and making the whole country as impregnable as Xiaowangqing.

One day in January 1967, he told some leading cadres, "We must not forget even for a moment that the enemy might attack us at any time. So we must keep ourselves fully prepared so that we can counterattack as soon as they attack us."

He instructed them in the serious lessons taught by the history of warfare. He said that there had been quite a few countries which had been toppled overnight by surprise attacks. He noted that these countries had been military powers but they had not prepared themselves for combat on a

regular footing. He even gave an example. Then he pointed out that history had witnessed victories the army and the people won through concerted efforts in do-or-die battles against superior enemies. He took the battles in defence of the Xiaowangqing guerrilla base fought under the command of Kim Il Sung in the days of the arduous anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle as an example of an all-people defence system. He noted that these battles were exemplary all-people defence battles in which the guerrillas and the people, rallied in one mind and will, had annihilated the attacking enemy and won victory.

He continued, "Making the whole country as impregnable as the Xiaowangqing guerrilla base by arming the whole people and turning the entire country into a fortress is the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung's intention and my determination."

Kim Jong Il also showed great interest in promoting the turning of the whole country into a fortress.

Inspecting the position of a KPA unit that was of great strategic and tactical importance in defending the west coast area, he stressed its military significance, and gave it the task of fortifying the defence position and maintaining readiness for combat.

In consideration of the strategic and tactical importance of a certain height from a military point of view, he ensured that a fortified position was built there.

He also studied the positions of several KPA units in the east coast area, and indicated concrete ways for making the structure of the positions perfect in combination with a variety of artificial barriers and organizing a firing system in combination with various weapons. At the same time, he took measures for fortifying all positions so as to defend a wide area by means of a small force.

With the promotion of training the entire army into a cadre army, modernizing the whole army, arming the whole nation and turning the whole country into a fortress, the Korean People's Army was strengthened as armed forces each soldier of which is a match for a hundred foes and the whole country was turned into an impregnable fortress. This enabled the Korean people to take a resolute, revolutionary stand when the US armed spy ship *Pueblo*[7] was captured in January 1968 and the US spy plane *EC-121*[8] was shot down in April 1969.

3. ASSISTING KIM IL SUNG IN HIS EXTERNAL ACTIVITIES

Entering the 1960s a large number of newly-independent countries in Asia, Africa and Latin America formed a powerful revolutionary force, and made an active advance into the international arena.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into the work with these countries. He accompanied Kim Il Sung to assist him in his external activities on his visit to Indonesia in April 1965 for participation in the celebrations for the 10th anniversary of the Bandung Conference.

The itinerary was a stressful one. The day after his arrival in Jakarta, Kim Il Sung was scheduled to take part in the celebrations to be held in Bandung 200 km away from the capital city, and in a celebration to be held the following day at the Bogor Palace, 160 km away from Bandung.

When Kim Il Sung was to go to Bandung, which was under the influence of rightist forces, Kim Jong Il took meticulous measures for his safety and went there by car to receive Kim Il Sung at the airport there.

On hearing this, President Sukarno said that as Premier Kim Il Sung was a world-renowned great man, the "young commander" under him must be a great man, exclaiming that the celebrations had been "one hundred percent successful." He even commanded in person the guarding of Kim Il Sung's personal safety.

When Premier Kim Il Sung expressed his gratitude for this, Sukarno said the gratitude should be extended to Korea's "young commander," and he asked Kim Il Sung what the official post of the young man was.

Kim Il Sung replied, "He is my chief aide-de-camp in charge of my personal safety. Without his assent, I don't move an inch."

On the day when Kim Il Sung gave a lecture at the Ali Archam Academy of Social Sciences, titled *On Socialist Construction in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and the South Korean Revolution,* Kim Il Sung arranged a banquet for President Sukarno. During the banquet, senior officials of Indonesia asked Kim Jong Il to express his opinion about the important problems arising in developing the Non-Aligned Movement. Kim Jong Il said that the first and foremost thing in the development of the

Non-Aligned Movement was to intensify unity. He noted that when the developing countries were firmly united, they could inflict a collective counterattack upon the imperialists and defend their dignity and sovereignty won at the cost of blood. He added that the developing countries could smash the economic blockade imposed by the imperialists and attain prosperity as high as that of the advanced industrial countries when they had realized exchanges and cooperation in the field of the economy and technology.

During his stay in Indonesia, Kim Jong Il met many political and social figures. His analysis of the world situation and emphasis on the validity and invincibility of the Non-Aligned Movement moved them greatly.

Kim Il Sung, accompanied by Sukarno, visited the Bogor Botanical Garden, which boasted a history of nearly 150 years and housed 10,000 kinds of plants. Sukarno said that he would name a rare flower bred by an Indonesian botanist after Kim Il Sung, saying, "The most respected leader in the world now is you, Your Excellency Kim Il Sung."

On May 9, 1965, some days after returning from Indonesia, Kim Jong Il met the officials concerned with foreign affairs. He explained to them the significance of Kim Il Sung's visit to Indonesia, instructing them to make efforts to strengthen friendship and unity with other countries.

In those days, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to strengthening solidarity with the peoples of Asian countries like Vietnam, Laos and Cambodia who were fighting against the US and other imperialists, with the Arab peoples in their fight against the US imperialists and Israeli expansionists, with the African peoples in their struggle for national liberation, and with the Cuban and other Latin-American peoples in their anti-US struggle.

Thanks to his energetic efforts, an upswing was made in Korea's external activities.

4. REVOLUTION IN ART AND LITERATURE

REVOLUTION IN THE CINEMA

From his childhood, Kim Jong Il demonstrated an extraordinary awareness of beauty and power of imagination with which he approached the things and phenomena around him in an artistic way. This struck the

people around him with wonder. Several poems he composed in his school days attracted people's admiration; the pictures he drew as practice were sometimes so perfect that they were exhibited at public shows. He was sensitive to the world of music, having a high level of skill of playing musical instruments and an exceptional sense of acoustics.

His artistic disposition developed and refined in the course of studying in a comprehensive way the art and literary works of the world and guiding the building of art and literature of the Workers' Party of Korea.

In his early days at the Central Committee of the Party he paid close attention to the work of art and literature.

On December 8, 1964, Kim Il Sung gave on-the-spot guidance to the Korean Film Studio. At an enlarged meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee held there, he made a speech on producing a great number of films that would contribute to education in the revolutionary and working-class spirit.

In order to bring about a fresh turn in the production of revolutionary films, the Political Committee entrusted Kim Jong Il that day with the task of guiding the work of cinematic art.

While guiding the production of feature films, Kim Jong Il matured his plan to bring about a revolution in art and literature so as to build a new Korean-style art and literature, a Juche-oriented art and literature, that would reflect the requirements of the times and the aspirations of the masses.

A revolution in art and literature was essential for building Juche-oriented, revolutionary art and literature. Such a style of art and literature could train the working people to be Juche-oriented revolutionaries, inspire their revolutionary enthusiasm and satisfy their ever-increasing cultural and aesthetic demands.

This revolution was also an urgent demand raised in relation to the state of art and literature of those days. In those days the world art and literature was suffering twists and turns owing to the ideological and cultural infiltration perpetrated by imperialists and the schemes of "liberalization" by revisionists. Moreover, the ideological after-effects left by the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary elements were hindering Korean art and literature from keeping in step with the developing revolution.

On the basis of his deep analysis of this state of affairs, Kim Jong Il

made public his plan to bring about a radical change in art and literature.

He said:

"We must bring about a revolution in the field of art and literature so as to check the influence of erroneous ideological trends of all hues that run counter to the current of the times, and produce revolutionary works of art and literature."

In order to carry out this plan, he paid primary attention to training politically and ideologically the writers and artists, the direct performers of art and literature, and directed great efforts to equipping them with the Juche idea. In particular, he saw to it that the system of artistic review meeting was abolished and instead a seminar on Kim Il Sung's thoughts on art and literature was organized on a regular footing so as to equip them with Kim Il Sung's Juche-orientated ideas and theories on art and literature. In his efforts to train the writers and artists through organizational life, he ensured that the process of creative practice was turned into a process of their revolutionary transformation, so that they would all free themselves from the remnants of all manner of outdated ideas and living habits.

Kim Jong Il started the revolution in art and literature by adapting the works created by Kim Il Sung in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle into film, novel, opera and drama forms.

He made the breakthrough for the revolution by giving priority to the revolution in the cinema.

He organized the Paektusan Production Unit, and in April 1968 gave it the task of adapting *The Sea of Blood,* a work Kim Il Sung created in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, to the screen.

Setting it as a basic principle in adoption to be faithful to the original and sustain the formal characteristics of cinematic art, Kim Jong Il explained to the creative workers Kim Il Sung's motive and intention for the production of the work, the circumstances of the times when it had been created, the seed and ideological and artistic features of the work and its informative and educational significance. He also guided their creative work almost every day. Burning the midnight oil sometimes with the creative workers, he improved or gave the finishing touches to the scenario and director's script, and gave help so that the musical pieces in the film became masterpieces. He frequently went to the filming location and guided directing, acting, artistic portrayal and filming, so that each scene was

completed on a high level. When the scene of the "punitive operation" by the Japanese imperialists was shot, he went to the location and guided the film production amidst the thick smoke caused by log cabins burned for the filming.

Through more than 120 rounds of guidance, he ensured that the film *The Sea of Blood* embodied the profound ideological and artistic contents of the original on the highest level.

When *The Fate of a Self-Defence Corps Man* was being adapted for the screen, he led all the creative workers of the film to fully understand the ideological and artistic features of the work; and when its filming was started, he went to the location in northern Ryanggang Province to guide their creative work. Thanks to his care, the creative workers and artists finished the production of the film in 40 days.

Kim Jong Il also led the adapting of *The Flower Girl* to the screen. The film won the Special Prize and Special Medal at the 18th Karlovy Vary Film Festival.

He saw to it that an innovation was made in the production of films based on socialist reality; thus scores of films of this style, including *The Flourishing Village,* which won the People's Prize, were produced in the single year of 1970.

By summing up and generalizing theoretically the successes and experience he had gained in leading the revolution in cinematic art, he made public in April 1973 *On the Art of the Cinema,* making a great contribution to the development of the theory of art and literature.

The work is comprised of eight chapters–*Life and Literature, Directing for the Cinema, Actor and Character, Camera and Image, Screen Art and Fine Art, Scenes and Music, Art and Creative Endeavour,* and *Guiding the Creative Process.*

The work advanced an original theory on communist humanism.

Kim Jong Il wrote in the work;

"We need a humanistic literature which gives prominence to the principle of independence, the development of independent individuals, and which creates the image of the truly typical man of the new era, thereby contributing to the transformation of the whole of society in accordance with the concept of Juche."

The basic demand of the communist humanistic activity is to pose and

answer the question of people's political integrity, and the basic method for portraying typical independent people is to highlight the typical communist individuals emerging from amongst the people and give a rich and detailed description of typical lives. This is the essential feature of communist humanism, Juche-orientated humanism, that is fundamentally different from the humanism of the past that stressed that literature should deal with man's life and place man at the centre of artistic representation.

The theory of the seed that Kim Jong Il describes in the work constitutes the essence of the Juche-oriented theory of creative work. The seed in art and literature means the core of a work; it is the ideological life-essence which contains both the writer's main subject and the soil in which the elements of the image can strike root; it is also the basis and the kernel of a literary work, integrating material, theme and thought in an organic relationship.

The work advanced the theory of the speed campaign in the creation of works of art and literature. This campaign is a revolutionary mode of creative work, providing the basic structure of artistic endeavour. It encourages writers and artists to display the maximum of political awareness and creative enthusiasm, and produce successful works of high ideological and artistic quality in the shortest possible period of time.

This theoretical work also provides a comprehensive clarification of the ideological theory of the essence of the revolutionary masterpiece, the theory of making the process of creative work the process of making creative artists revolutionary and working-class, the theory of revolutionary systems of creative work and guidance to the creative process, the Juche-oriented theories of directing for the cinema and acting, and other important theoretical and practical problems arising in the building of Juche-oriented art and literature, including filming, music and fine arts.

FIVE REVOLUTIONARY OPERAS

Following the revolution in the art of cinema, Kim Jong Il put forward in September 1969 the policy of bringing about a revolution in the art of opera.

In those days the opera of Korea failed to reflect the thoughts, emotions, aspirations and demands of the people. Some creative artists steeped in

outdated ideas were opposed to modernizing the opera art. Meanwhile, dogmatists and those who worshipped big countries attempted to copy the style of the Western opera, claiming that opera should naturally be of the Western style.

Making a revolution in the opera art so as to smash the outdated pattern of the conventional opera and create a new style of operas was an urgent demand of those days.

Kim Jong Il, who had grasped the limitations of the opera art and studied the method of overcoming those limitations, made public his plan to bring about a revolution in opera art and started it in late March 1971 by adapting *The Sea of Blood* for the opera stage.

He set the main task and principle of creative work for the opera revolution–making the opera art modern and popular on the basis of its revolutionary content and national form, making the opera songs stanzaic, introducing *pangchang* (off-stage song–Tr.), getting dances to match the drama, and introducing fine arts for three-dimensional revolving stages.

He stipulated that the libretto should be written in a way that would not damage in the least the profound ideological and artistic content of the original work. When the libretto was written, he motivated the composers, soloists, stage artists, choreographers, conductor, director and other leading creative artists for the creation of an opera of a new style.

His creative thinking was directed to doing away with arias and recitatives, the basic means of artistic representation of the conventional opera, and making the stanzaic song, popular, comprehensible to the people, gentle and beautiful, run through the opera.

One day, he went to the Pyongyang Grand Theatre when the production of the opera was in full swing. Saying that he would be part of the creative group from then on, he inspired the power of conception and artistic representation in the creative workers who had been racking their brains to make the opera songs stanzaic.

Pointing out that setting speech to music was a conventional style, he said that the proper method was to pick the core out of the speech to make it stanzaic, and set the stanzaic lyrics to music. He polished some lyrics and got the artists to sing or perform musical instruments so as to help them make the songs stanzaic. Thanks to this, the traces of arias and recitatives were finally eliminated from the opera, and a new-style song, the stanzaic

song, that portrays the flow of man's emotional life and his character in a rich and diversified way and sustains the work's dramatic nature was created.

The introduction of *pangchang* into the opera to enhance its artistic effect was also a fruit of Kim Jong Il's conception and creative study.

Pangchang, a new form of music, expressed the inmost world of the hero, which he himself was not in a position to express, a medium and guide that introduced the events taking place on the stage, a commentary of history and a guide that described the strong current of history and society. With the introduction of *pangchang* into the opera, the innermost world of characters that could not be expressed by the stage song alone could be described in width and depth, and in a diversified manner, and the seed and theme of the work could be revealed more expressively.

Dance became an indispensable means of portrayal in the opera, revealing the thoughts, emotions and life of the characters, and the theme and idea of the work, as well as making the stage more colourful. The stage art was developed into a new one, three-dimensional and revolving. In addition, other unique and fresh means of portrayal were created for the opera.

The revolutionary opera, *The Sea of Blood,* featuring stanzaic songs, *pangchang,* and the Korean style of dance and stage art, was produced in the short period of four months.

On July 17, 1971, Kim Il Sung viewed the premiere of the opera, and commented that it was exactly in Korean style.

With *The Sea of Blood* as the prototype, Kim Jong Il promoted the creation of more revolutionary operas in this new style. On the basis of the valuable experience he had gained in the course of creating *The Sea of Blood,* he ensured that operas titled *The Flower Girl, A True Daughter of the Party, Tell O Forest* and *The Song of Mt. Kumgang* were created in succession in a little over one year.

Following the success in the revolution in cinematic art and opera, an overall development took place in all fields of art and literature, including music, dance, fine arts and acrobatics. In this way, a heyday of the Juche-oriented art was ushered in in Korea in the 1970s.

The art troupes, like the Mansudae Art Troupe and Phibada Opera Troupe which were organized and trained as able art organizations by

Kim Jong Il in the course of the revolution in art and literature, as well as Korean People's Army Song and Dance Ensemble, staged abroad the revolutionary operas, *The Sea of Blood* and *The Flower Girl,* as well as song-and-dance ensembles, arousing a great admiration.

5. WITH A NOBLE SENSE OF OBLIGATION

Greeting the 60th birthday of Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il directed his efforts to leading the members of the Workers' Party of Korea and other working people to realize more clearly the greatness and benevolence of Kim Il Sung, who performed immortal exploits for his country and fellow people, and cherish a noble sense of duty to consummate his cause down through the generations.

In August 1971, when he was on the peak of Mt. Paektu, Kim Jong Il said in retrospect of Kim Il Sung's career:

"No one in the world has traversed the rugged road of revolution for as long a period as our leader did.

"After several months he will greet his 60th birthday. From now on we must shoulder the revolutionary cause he pioneered."

In order to celebrate Kim Il Sung's 60th birthday in a grand fashion, he guided the work of erecting Kim Il Sung's bronze statue in Pyongyang while encouraging the Party members and other working people to effect a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

He said to the officials: "Building Comrade Kim Il Sung's bronze statue is an undertaking to uphold and safeguard his high authority and prestige, and hand down to posterity his greatness and august image. Therefore, the statue must be built so that it can radiate his greatness as an outstanding leader and his image as the benevolent father of the people."

Thus, the erecting of the statue was turned into a process by which the Party members and other working people heightened their sense of loyalty to Kim Il Sung.

And thanks to Kim Jong Il's guidance, the Korean Revolution Museum was built and equipped in a grand way. Relics related to the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities were discovered in a great number, confirmed in a scientific way and displayed in the museum. In addition, the

revolutionary sites associated with Kim Il Sung's career and the museums of the revolutionary activities of Comrade Kim Il Sung in every province of the country were laid out properly so that they could play their role as bases for education in the monolithic ideology of the Party.

Greeting Kim Il Sung's 60th birthday, the Order of Kim Il Sung and the Kim Il Sung Prize were instituted, the system of conferring as a present a watch inscribed with Kim Il Sung's autograph was established and badges bearing Kim Il Sung's portrait were awarded to all Party members and other working people.

A hymn to Kim Il Sung, titled *Long Life and Good Health to the Leader,* was produced and disseminated. Gifts from Kim Il Sung were presented to all students, pupils and pre-school children. A national meeting, public lectures, symposiums, national art festival, soiree, mass gymnastics display and other colourful events took place, furthering the festive atmosphere.

Greeting the red-letter day of April 15, Kim Jong Il paid special attention to implanting in the hearts of the military commanding personnel of the new generation the sense of duty to carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche.

A few days after Kim Il Sung's 60th birthday, Kim Jong Il met Kim Il Sung, and told him how preparations were being made to mark the anniversary of the founding of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army that would fall on April 25. Availing himself of the opportunity, he said to Kim Il Sung, "In recent days the veterans of the anti-Japanese revolution have requested on several occasions that they would like to get together with you and talk about old times on the occasion of the anniversary. If you are going to sit together with them, I would like you to invite the commanders of all branches of arms and services of the new generation."

On hearing this, Kim Il Sung replied that he had been so pressed by work that he had failed to meet them privately to have a talk even though they were nearby, adding that as he could afford time that day he would spend the day with the veterans and military commanding personnel of the new generation.

That day Kim Il Sung, accompanied by Kim Jong Il, veterans and military commanding personnel of the new generation, visited his birthplace at Mangyongdae.

Entering the yard of his old home, Kim Il Sung reminisced about old times with deep emotion. Naming one by one those who had been killed in action during the anti-Japanese revolution, he said in a regretful tone of voice that those precious fighters had departed from him too early. He continued, "We veterans must wage the revolution to the last moment of our lives, and bring up reliable successors to the revolution for the sake of those who have departed from us."

That day he told the generals of the new generation that they should carry forward the revolutionary cause their predecessors had pioneered and shouldered for 40 years, and sanctify it with the purity of their blood.

Looking at the generals, Kim Jong Il said, "We must live up to his trust and expectations by carrying forward and consummating the revolutionary cause of Juche. We must revere him as the anti-Japanese veterans did and be faithful to him."

At the end of May that year, Kim Jong Il ascended Mt. Paektu. Commanding a bird's-eye view of the mountain, Kim Jong Il said to the officials who accompanied him: "Live and work in the eternal revolutionary spirit of Paektu–this is what I have resolved today here on Mt. Paektu and what I want to say to you."

Contained in the remark was his noble sense of obligation, an iron will to carry forward and put into practice the revolutionary traditions of the Workers' Party of Korea, and consummate through the generations to come the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by Kim Il Sung on Mt. Paektu.

6. THE TORCH OF PERFORMING THE THREE MAJOR TASKS OF THE TECHNOLOGICAL REVOLUTION

Kim Jong Il guided the work of carrying out the three major tasks of the technological revolution advanced at the Fifth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea–considerably narrowing the distinctions between heavy and light labour, and between industrial and agricultural work, and freeing women from the heavy burden of household chores.

In order to narrow the differences between heavy and light labour, an important task of the revolution, he pinpointed as the main objective the introduction of automation into production processes in the field of

heavy labour, and directed his efforts to this end.

In his talk in January 1973 with senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled *Let Us Introduce Automation into Production and Free the Working People from Heavy Labour,* he instructed that the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Works be laid out as an example of automation, and the experience publicized across the country for the kindling of the torch of introducing automation in all fields of the national economy.

He said, "We are new to introducing automation, but we must do it with our own efforts on the principle of self-reliance. Of course, the equipment we are manufacturing might be inferior to those made in the countries that have a long history of industry. But we must solve the problem by conducting a mass technological innovation movement with the conviction that we can make just as excellent equipment as others can."

In the meantime, he dispatched a group from the central broadcasting station and an art troupe to the iron works to inspire the people there to innovation and increased activity.

The introduction of automation progressed with exponential speed. Closed-circuit TVs and wirelesses were installed in the steel workshop, remote-control systems were set up in the sifting yard and May 14 workshop, and automation and remote-control were introduced into the sintering and coke-oven workshops and others. Monitoring major production processes through closed-circuit TV and remote-control equipment, and administering production via wireless was completed in a little over one year.

Following this, a demonstration lecture was held there for the senior officials of the major factories and enterprises in the country. They learned the experience of the iron works, and made efforts to introduce automation in their own units. Thus, full-scale introduction of automation started in Korea, and a new period of the technological revolution was ushered in.

Introducing full-scale mechanization in farmwork was an urgent task in narrowing the distinction between industrial and agricultural labour.

Kim Jong Il promoted the work of laying out Chongsan-ri as an exemplary unit in the comprehensive mechanization of farmwork, and publicizing its success and experience across the country.

Whenever a new type of farm machine was produced, he saw to it that it was sent to Chongsan-ri before anywhere else; he also ensured that

necessary material, technological and labour assistance to the rural community was strengthened. In addition, he went there on several occasions to acquaint himself with the actual situation, and solved the problems it was facing.

In May 1971, he visited Chongsan-ri again, and told its management officials to turn the place into a prototype of rural technological revolution, a model of rural construction.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the success and experience achieved in Chongsan-ri were publicized throughout the country.

One evening in early March 1972, Kim Jong Il, on his way to give field guidance, met tractor drivers at Yangdong-ri, Unpha County, North Hwanghae Province, and had a talk with them. He told them that the Party was trying to make farmwork easy and pleasant by overall mechanization and the greater use of chemicals in agriculture through the promotion of a rural technological revolution. He noted that the role of tractor drivers was important in realizing the comprehensive mechanization of farming in the near future. He instructed them to take the lead in the rural technological revolution, cherishing the sense of responsibility in being the vanguard of rural mechanization.

He also visited Ryongo-ri and Tongrim-ri in Mundok County, South Phyongan Province, State Farm No. 5 in Taehongdan County, Ryanggang Province, and cooperative farms in Sinchon and Samchon counties, South Hwanghae Province, leading them to enhance comprehensive mechanization and greater use of chemicals in agriculture.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to producing tractors, trucks and other efficient and modern farming machines in greater numbers, so as to promote the rural technological revolution. In particular, the production processes in the Kum Song Tractor Plant and Sungri General Motor Works were put on a modern footing, and bases for producing or repairing farm machines were built in every province. Thus, the level of technical equipment of the countryside improved radically, opening a bright vista for the overall mechanization of the rural economy.

In an effort to free women from the heavy burden of kitchen drudgery, Kim Jong Il paid attention to increasing the number of kitchen utensils and putting foodstuff production on an industrial footing.

As a result, the policy of carrying out the three major tasks of the

technological revolution advanced by Kim Il Sung was pursued in several fields with success.

7. CREATING A FRESH METHOD OF PARTY WORK

Developing the Party work in a fresh way was an urgent demand facing the developing Party and revolution in the early 1970s. A fresh turn in the Party work would make it possible to further consolidate the Party organizationally and ideologically, enhance its leadership role, and satisfactorily realize its leadership of the revolution and construction.

Kim Jong Il energetically led the work of applying in the field of Party work the Party's traditional work method created by Kim Il Sung in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

He was deeply interested in breaking out of the outdated, conventional method of formalism in the ideological work of the Party and developing the work in a fresh way.

In those days the tendency of putting too much stress on form for form's sake still lingered in ideological work, weakening the effect of the work in the edification of the masses.

During his field guidance of cooperative farms in Mundok, Kaechon and Pakchon counties in early 1973, Kim Il Sung expressed his concern over the fact that the ideological work was being conducted merely for form's sake and was not based on the real situation.

Improving the ideological work in a revolutionary way to make it keep in step with the developing situation was an urgent task.

Kim Jong Il determined to improve the ideological work by smashing the deep-rooted, outdated pattern of formalism in this sphere.

In March 1973, he ensured that the study groups of various names were renamed "Group for Studying the Revolutionary Ideology of Comrade Kim Il Sung", that the "Pictorial Records of the Revolutionary History of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung" were recompiled to meet the developing situation, and that all study groups conducted study sessions in a substantial way with Kim Il Sung's works as the main material for study.

In particular, with a plan to bring about a fundamental change in study by Party members and other working people, Kim Jong Il saw to it that the

art and literary sector created a model of the question-and-answer method Kim Il Sung had advanced in the days of the anti-Japanese revolution.

In 1973, the First National Study Contest for Artists was organized. On the basis of the experience of the contest, Kim Jong Il in November the same year ensured that the question-and-answer method was introduced widely, so that new progress was made in studying.

Kim Jong Il created a new form of agitation for enlisting the people for the implementation of their economic tasks by motivating their ideology, and publicized this form. He ensured that large groups involving Party officials, economic executives, officials of the mass media and artists were organized and sent to the major coal and ore mines for agitation for increased production, so as to improve the extraction industry about which Kim Il Sung had shown so much concern.

On the basis of this experience, he created an example in this regard at the Kum Song Tractor Plant and Sungri General Motor Works through large-scale agitation. In order to put this type of agitation on a regular footing, he encouraged the formation of artistic propaganda teams, broadcasting detachments and travelling artistic agitation teams in the capital, provinces and major production units.

Kim Jong Il also improved the system and method of Party work for the fresh development of this work. The functions of departments and sections of Party committees were formulated in a new way to meet the demand of the developing situation, and an order by which they worked according to those functions was set up. A new system of giving guidance to subordinate units was also established for Party officials. Efforts were channelled into doing away with the tendency among Party workers of performing Party work in an administrative way, so that they strove to turn Party work into work with the people by giving priority to political work and edification.

His energetic guidance smashed the outdated conventional pattern in Party work, and ushered in a period of its fresh development.

3

(FEBRUARY 1974–SEPTEMBER 1980)

1. ACCLAIMED AS THE SUCCESSOR

Kim Jong Il was acclaimed as Kim Il Sung's successor, as the leader of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Korean people, in February 1974. Thus the mature requirement of the times for the development of the revolution was met, and the unanimous desire and wish of the entire Party and all the people came true.

The correct solution to the question of the heir to the revolutionary cause was a mature requirement of the Korean revolution in the 1970s.

The Workers' Party of Korea and the Korean people were speeding up their historic advance towards the complete victory of socialism along the line indicated by the 5th Congress of the Party, and the cause of Juche had entered a higher stage of the struggle for socialism and communism. With the lapse of time, one revolutionary generation was being replaced by another. The new generation that had grown up after the winning back of country emerged as the main force in the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction. The revolutionary cause of Juche, which had been advanced victoriously by the first revolutionary generation under Kim Il Sung's leadership, was to be taken over by the new revolutionary generation.

In February 1974, when the question of inheriting the revolutionary cause was raised as a mature requirement, the 8th Plenary Meeting of the 5th Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea was held. The meeting adopted a decision on attaining the 10 long-term objectives of socialist economic construction, and then raised the question of electing the successor.

At the meeting, Kim Il[9], O Jin U[10], Rim Chun Chu[11], and other members of the Political Committee and secretaries of the Central Committee of the

Party proposed electing Kim Jong Il to the leadership of the Party on behalf of all the Party members and the people. Saying that the enormous tasks facing the Party required the strengthening of the Party leadership over the revolution and construction, they proposed placing Kim Jong Il at the helm of all the Party work, and expressed their resolve to work in support of him, discussing work under his leadership.

After working as an instructor and section chief on the Party Central Committee, Kim Jong Il became the deputy head of a department of the Central Committee in September 1970, and the department head in July 1973, and assumed the heavy responsibility of Secretary of the Party Central Committee in September the same year. He was elected to the Party Central Committee in October 1972, and rendered distinguished services in Party building and Party activity in this period.

Regarding loyalty to Kim Il Sung as the very lifeblood of the revolutionary of the Juche type, Kim Jong Il set a great example of loyalty to him. By his energetic ideological and theoretical activities, Kim Jong Il evolved many original ideas and theories that championed the revolutionary thoughts of Kim Il Sung and developed them. Through his practical activities as an assistant to Kim Il Sung, he acquired the seasoned and refined art of leadership from him at a high level, set an example in establishing the revolutionary and popular method and style of work, and embodied in himself the noble communist virtues of Kim Il Sung, who devoted all his life to the people. By efficiently leading the work of strengthening Kim Il Sung's monolithic leadership, and ensuring the Party's solid unity of ideology and will, and a fresh development of Party work, he made a great contribution to consolidating and developing the Party so as to make it unconquerable.

Holding fast to the line of the three revolutions, Kim Jong Il successfully led the work of improving the Party leadership in economic construction and the struggle to strengthen the revolutionary armed forces, and thus increased the country's economic power and defence capability. Through his energetic guidance of the development of socialist culture, he effected a change in all spheres of cultural development.

With his wise leadership of the work of accelerating national reunification, he greatly helped to speed up the nationwide victory of the Korean revolution.

For these achievements, as well as for his refined art of leadership and his noble virtue, he earned respect and trust from the people.

The people, who had keenly appreciated Kim Jong Il's greatness and sagacity in practical life, composed songs in praise of him and spread them, calling him "respected leader," "intelligent leader," and "dear leader," and raising the slogan, "Let us become bodyguards and shock brigades unfailingly loyal to the dear leader Comrade Kim Jong Il!" In the course of this, a large number of people sent petitions and letters to the Party Central Committee, requesting it to acclaim Kim Jong Il as Kim Il Sung's successor. These petitions and letters represented the ardent desire of the Korean people to acclaim Kim Jong Il as Kim Il Sung's successor, and expressed their unanimous decision to accomplish, in support of Kim Jong Il's leadership, their revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by Kim Il Sung.

The 8th Plenary Meeting of the 5th Central Committee of the Party elected Kim Jong Il to the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, and acclaimed him as Kim Il Sung's successor, reflecting the wish and will of the entire Party and all the people.

Indeed, the acclamation of Kim Jong Il as Kim Il Sung's successor was the absolute will of the Korean people, the natural outcome of the development of the Party and the revolution, and a historical inevitability.

At the Presidium of the Political Committee that day, Kim Il Sung said that the plenary meeting had discussed a very important question. He went on:

"All those who attended the plenary meeting unanimously acclaimed Secretary Kim Jong Il to the leadership of our Party for the accomplishment of the Juche cause. I think the same. Your thought is the thought of the General Secretary, and the thought of the General Secretary is your thought. I am of the same opinion."

Thanking the officials for their best wishes and expectations that day, Kim Jong Il said that he was one of the men who supported the revolutionary cause of Kim Il Sung. "Let us all work harder in loyal support of the President," he emphasized.

The acclamation of Kim Jong Il as Kim Il Sung's successor, as heir to the revolutionary cause of Juche, meant the solution to their question of carrying forward the revolutionary cause in Korea.

2. TOWARDS MODELLING THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON THE JUCHE IDEA

FEBRUARY DECLARATION

Kim Jong Il systematized Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought, and declared that modelling the whole society on the Juche idea was the ultimate programme of the Party.

Reviewing the history of the thought of the working class in the previous age, Kim Jong Il clarified that Kim Il Sung had evolved a new and original thought. He was firmly resolved to raise the slogan of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea in the course of exposing and liquidating anti-Party, counterrevolutionary elements.

Not only in his office but on his field guidance tours, Kim Jong Il never ceased thinking of how to systematize Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought. When giving field guidance in Ryanggang Province in September 1971, for instance, Kim Jong Il put great efforts into writing down his ideas about how to systematize Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought. By day he met officials from the capital and the province, and discussed work with them; by night he wrote till the dawn of the next day.

Even in short breaks in his work, he thought about how to systematize Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought. One day, on a visit to Mupho, a place which is associated with the revolutionary activity of Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il continued to think while fishing from the bank of Dam No.7.

Kim Jong Il, who had been spending day and night thinking and writing, clarified, at a meeting of the Information Department of the Party Central Committee and at other opportunities, that Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought which was based on a new philosophical principle of Juche was the only guiding ideology of the era of independence. He expressed his firm decision to systematize Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought.

At the national training course for the Party's information workers on February 19, 1974, he defined Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought as an integral system of the thought, theory and method of Juche.

On the basis of the formulation of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought, Kim Jong Il declared the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea as the ultimate programme of the Party: Modelling the whole society on the Juche idea means advancing the Korean revolution in line with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought and building a communist society on the basis of the Juche idea.

The declaration of the programme of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea was the declaration of the programme of the working-class party for accomplishing the cause of Juche.

ADVANCEMENT IN THE IDEOLOGICAL WORK OF THE PARTY

Having defined Kim Il Sung's revolutionary thought as an integral system of the thought, theory and method of Juche, Kim Jong Il put great efforts into improving the ideological work of the Party to meet the requirements for modelling the whole society on the Juche idea.

At the national training course for the information workers of the Party in February 1974, he said that the basic task of the Party's ideological work was to model the whole society on the Juche idea.

He made it clear that an important question in the Party's ideological work of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea was to intensify education in the monolithic ideology and revolutionary education among the Party members and working people, develop information work for grand socialist construction, break the outmoded pattern of formalism and make a new change in the ideological work of the Party. And then he took measures to improve the Party's ideological work.

He first put efforts into intensifying education in the monolithic ideology and revolutionary education among the Party members and working people. He made sure that Kim Il Sung's Works and other works were newly edited and published so as to deepen their study, that education in the revolutionary traditions was carried on in breadth, and that the Party members and working people acquired a deep knowledge of the achievements made by Kim Il Sung and the Party.

He saw to it that revolutionary education and class education were intensified among the Party members and working people, to equip them

with an unshakable working-class viewpoint and revolutionary world outlook, so that they reliably safeguarded the Korean revolution and victoriously advanced the building of socialism.

In addition, he clarified the Party's consistent policy of making an upsurge in economic construction by giving priority to ideological work, and ensured that information work was concentrated on encouraging all the working people to join in the speed campaign.

The speed campaign is the basic form of struggle for socialist construction to push forward all work like lightning. It is the principle of developing work in a revolutionary manner in that it effects a continuous leap forward and miraculous successes.

The speed campaign demands that the people push forward their work as rapidly as possible by mobilizing all the forces and ensure the quality of work at the highest level. Achieving the greatest success in quantity and quality in the shortest period of time is the basic requirement of the speed campaign.

Kim Jong Il ensured the implementation of the policy of grand socialist construction through continuous innovation and upsurge in production and construction by overcoming all the elements in the way of the speed campaign by the method of ideological struggle.

The ideological campaign is ideological education to make a radical change in all aspects of people's ideological viewpoints, their mode of thinking, their work attitude and mode of activity, their work method and work style.

In order to break the outmoded pattern of formalism in the Party's ideological work, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to establishing the revolutionary method and popular style of work among the Party information workers who were in direct charge of ideological work.

On a visit to the Three Revolutions Exhibition in Pyongyang, Kim Jong Il came to a halt in front of a knapsack which an official of a county Party committee used to carry when going to his subordinate unit to do political work. The knapsack contained works of Kim Il Sung, the reminiscences *For the Freedom and Liberation of the People,* explanations of Party policy to be used when talking to the people, information about the Juche farming method, water colours, a harmonica, and so on. Appreciating the work attitude of the county Party committee official who used to carry the

knapsack, Kim Jong Il told the accompanying officials that the official had correctly grasped the Party's intention and that his example should be spread. Later, this work experience was introduced widely to all the Party officials, and produced great results.

Kim Jong Il set an example in doing the ideological work of the Party in the field. On a visit to Kangwon Province in September 1974, he helped officials intensify education in the Party's monolithic ideology, education in the revolutionary traditions and class education among the Party members and working people, and got this experience publicized throughout the country.

Meanwhile, Kim Jong Il developed new and original forms and methods of the Party's ideological work, to bring about innovations.

He saw to it that the forms and methods of public lectures were improved, so as to make public lectures contribute better to educating and rousing the masses to the revolution and construction.

He proposed introducing tape-recorded public lectures to help the Party members and working people acquire a vivid and impressive understanding of the greatness of Kim Il Sung and the Party. In early April 1974, he acquainted himself with the production of tape-recorded public lectures prepared on the occasion of Kim Il Sung's birthday, listening to the tape-recordings and guiding the voice-overs and musical editing in detail to improve them.

He exerted strenuous efforts to make the media, art and literature powerful ideological instruments and effective means of educating people along revolutionary lines, and spurred them to continually make innovations and developments.

He kindled the flames of revolution in editorial writing in February 1974, and then started a revolution in newspapers, reporting and publication, and made sure that the Party's press successfully carried out its mission and task as an ideological instrument that contributed to the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea.

Through the dissemination of the works of revolutionary art and literature, Kim Jong Il ensured that the Party members and working people learned the truth about struggle and life, and revolutionized themselves by emulating the heroes and heroines of the works. Under his energetic leadership, the outmoded pattern of formalism in the Party's ideological work was broken down, and a new advance was made in this work.

MODELLING THE ENTIRE PARTY ON THE JUCHE IDEA

Kim Jong Il found the key to modelling the whole society on the Juche idea in modelling the entire Party on the Juche idea, and organized and led the work of putting it into practice.

With a decision to make an advance in Party work, Kim Jong Il proposed a training course for Party organizational workers, and organized and guided all its processes, from the preparation of lectures and other necessary steps to its conclusion.

During the preparations for the training course, Kim Jong Il went over the subjects for training compiled by officials. Saying that in order to equip Party organizational workers with the theory of Party work, problems arising in the thick of things should be dealt with, he chose the subjects of the training course one by one.

He gave meticulous guidance to the direction and system of writing syllabuses, and even the expression of sentences.

Advising the officials to develop the content boldly, instead of referring to the previous syllabuses and textbooks, he gave repeated explanations of important items. He went over their draft syllabuses and put the finishing touches to them.

On the syllabus titled, *The Policy of the Party Central Committee on Making the Entire Party a Cadre Party*, Kim Jong Il made the comment: "Making the entire Party a cadre Party is an honourable and important undertaking to train all our Party members and working people to become revolutionary fighters who are unfailingly loyal to the great leader and to strengthen our Party so that it becomes a glorious, unconquerable party that will inherit the lifeblood of Juche for ever."

He explained why the development of the entire Party into a cadre party was an essential requirement for the development of the Korean revolution and the Party itself, and then dwelt on the basic content of this policy. He revised the syllabus in such great detail that it seemed to have been re-written. He made the central idea of each chapter and each section of the syllabus stand out in bold relief, and corrected all the items which were

unclear in meaning, poor in content, improper in the direction of dealing with the question, lengthy or desultory.

The syllabuses for the training course not only contained the original theory of party building which had been evolved by him, but every single sentence and every single expression were polished by him until they were perfect. He also made sure that the scale and form of the training course were defined in a new and expansive way.

After these preparations, the training course was held on a large scale in Pyongyang from early July to early August 1974.

During the national training course for the Party's organizational workers, on August 2, 1974, Kim Jong Il set forth the policy of modelling the entire Party on the Juche idea.

Modelling the entire Party on the Juche idea means training all the Party members to be an elite of the Juche type, and carrying on Party building and Party activities thoroughly in line with Kim Il Sung's thought, theory and method.

He instructed that the monolithic ideological system and leadership system should be firmly established in the Party in order to model the entire Party on the Juche idea.

Kim Jong Il also clearly explained the tasks and methods of strengthening the Party and the revolutionary ranks, tightening Party leadership of the construction of the socialist economy, and improving the system and method of Party work.

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership, the Workers' Party of Korea entered a higher stage of development, and advances were made in all spheres of Party work and Party activity.

He energetically organized and led the work of strengthening the system of Party leadership in all fields of the revolution and construction. At a meeting of the senior officials of the Organizational Leadership Department and the Information Department of the Party Central Committee in April 1979, he set forth the policy of establishing the Party's leadership system, and ensured firm Party leadership of the revolution and construction. As a result, the militant power and leadership role of the Party organizations at all levels increased, and Party leadership in all spheres of the revolution and construction was successfully realized.

3. HERO OF CREATION AND CONSTRUCTION

70-DAY CAMPAIGN

The 8th Plenary Meeting of the 5th Central Committee of the Party, held in February 1974, set the task of carrying out the Six-Year National Economic Plan ahead of schedule by implementing the policy of grand socialist construction.

In 1974 grand socialist construction started in Korea, and that year was of decisive significance in carrying out the Six-Year Plan. Only when the enormous tasks for that year had been overfulfilled was it possible to carry out the Six-Year Plan with success and advance grand socialist construction to a higher stage. The planned quotas for 1974, however, were not being met smoothly.

At this moment, Kim Jong Il proposed to Kim Il Sung that he would solve the problems in economic work by rousing Party organizations to action.

On October 9, 1974, Kim Jong Il called a consultative meeting of the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council, and the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, and made a speech under the title, *Let Us Mobilize the Entire Party in a Vigorous 70-Day Campaign.* In this speech, he clearly explained the purpose of the 70-day campaign, the tasks of the campaign and the method of ensuring success in it.

He made a detailed plan for ensuring success in the campaign, and sent leadership teams to the field. Mass meetings in support of the campaign were held in the capital, provinces, cities and counties, and the campaign started on October 21 throughout the country. Kim Jong Il made sure that all the officials went down to production sites carrying their knapsacks, gave priority to political work, sharing bed and board with the producer masses, and conducted agitation for increased production by using all forms and means of information work. Large numbers of officials and artistic troupes in the capital and provinces went to the project sites and conducted militant agitation to heighten the morale of the Party members and other working people.

Meanwhile, Kim Jong Il raised a fierce struggle to overcome outmoded ideological maladies such as self-centredness, expediency and passivity, which obstructed the implementation of Party policy. As a result, a new change took place in the officials' ideological point of view, in their mode of thinking and work attitude, and production increased quickly.

He concentrated efforts on revitalizing mining, transport and export, the main links in the whole chain of the campaign.

He ensured that every effort was made to support coal mines and ore mines, get tunnelling, stripping and pit construction to go ahead of the other processes, supply them with efficient modern mining equipment, and quickly increase haulage by conveyor belts and cableways. He saw to it that the railway control system was thoroughly established, that transport was organized properly, that unit-train service was strengthened and that the turn-round time of wagons was reduced, in order to ease the strain on transport. He also speeded up the production of wagons, the repair of locomotives and the mechanization of loading and unloading. In addition, he ensured a rapid increase in the production of export goods, their smooth transport and rapid passage through the trading ports.

He put great efforts into tapping internal reserves and making effective use of them. He made sure that reserves were tapped in a mass movement, and that this work was developed by strengthening cooperation among the related factories, enterprises and areas, not confining it to individual factories and enterprises, cities and counties.

During the campaign, Kim Jong Il gave oral instructions and written tasks on scores of occasions, specifying the direction of effort and methods of carrying them out for each sector. He acquainted himself with the daily progress in the campaign in the whole country, and took necessary measures. He inspected Sinchon, Haeju and many other areas and units, getting first-hand knowledge of how the officials were conducting organizational and political activities, how they were directing the campaign, how production was going on, how they were providing conditions for production, and how they were dealing with the supply services. He then helped the officials to solve their problems.

The 70-day campaign was carried out successfully under his leadership, successes were made in grand socialist construction, and the "70-day-campaign speed" was recorded. During the campaign, industrial production

increased to 1.7 times the figure of the previous period, and the national economic plan for the year was overfulfilled in all aspects. As a result, a breakthrough was made in carrying out the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule by the 30th anniversary of the foundation of the Party.

The Central People's Committee of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea awarded Kim Jong Il the title of Hero of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea in February 1975.

ENDLESS JOURNEY FOR FIELD GUIDANCE

After making a breakthrough in grand socialist construction by carrying out the 70-day campaign, Kim Jong Il started a tour for field guidance in order to fulfil the Six-Year Plan by the 30th anniversary of the foundation of the Party.

In the first half of 1975, he inspected North and South Hamgyong provinces, Kangwon Province, North and South Phyongan provinces, and South Hwanghae Province.

Kim Jong Il paid special attention to the work of the rural economy. In these months, Kim Il Sung was away from the country for a long time on a visit to foreign countries.

One day in May 1975 when rice transplanting was in full swing, Kim Jong Il received a long-distance telephone call from Kim Il Sung who was on a tour abroad. He asked about the weather conditions at home and about farming operations, in an anxious tone of voice.

After the telephone conversation, Kim Jong Il immediately summoned the officials of the agricultural sector, and took measures to finish rice transplanting as soon as possible. He then proceeded to inspect South Phyongan Province and then North Phyongan Province.

He inspected the plain areas in North Phyongan Province, and arrived at a certain place late at night. The officials accompanying him thought that he would now take a rest. But he told his suite to make preparations for further travel, saying that he had now learned roughly about the farming situation in the west coast areas, but that he could not feel relieved without seeing how farming was going on in the east coast region. He told his suite to give the drivers a rest, as he would go by rail.

To the embarrassed officials Kim Jong Il said, "I am also an official

working for the people, I ought to go by the train used by the people." He did not permit the officials to arrange a separate train. They left the place and arrived at Sunchon Station at midnight. When the eastbound train pulled in at the station, Kim Jong Il got on it.

The train ran all night, and arrived at Kowon Station early in the following morning. The senior officials of the province, informed of his coming, came to meet him at the station.

The passengers and the conductors, who felt from the atmosphere of the platform that an important cadre had travelled in the rear carriage of their train, were surprised to see Kim Jong Il getting off the train, and thought that he was a great but ordinary man.

Kim Jong Il got into a car, and after a while the car pulled up by the field of a farm in Kangwon Province. He got out of the car and walked along a furrow of the field. Finding an empty space where there should be a maize seedling in the newly transplanted row, he advised the officials to ensure the necessary numbers of seedlings per unit area and more careful transplanting. Finding a maize seedling which had fallen over, he set it right and firmed up the soil around the stem.

Hearing the report of a senior official of the province that the transplanting of maize seedlings had been finished, that the transplanting of rice seedlings was going on as planned, and that the industrial production quota for May had been fulfilled, he said, with a bright smile on his face, that the report gladdened him more than the offer of flower bouquets or shouts of hurrah to welcome him. When he met the officials of the management board of the cooperative farm that day, he explained them the meaning of the Juche farming method evolved by Kim Il Sung, and instructed that they should fully apply this method to farming.

Kim Jong Il also gave field guidance to the industrial sector. He gave such guidance to the large-scale project for the construction of a long-distance conveyor belt system at the Unryul Mine on the west coast, and then on July 1 inspected the Komdok General Mining Enterprise, a large nonferrous metal production base.

On arrival at Komdok, he got off the train, made directly for the Hall of Culture, and learned about the general situation of the mine. Then he inspected Ore–Dressing Plant No. 2, and proceeded to an underground workplace which was not included in his itinerary. That was the workplace

to which Kim Il Sung had given field direction on April 5, 1961.

The officials accompanying him tried to dissuade him from going underground and proceeding to the face, saying that it was too dangerous. But Kim Jong Il insisted on going right to the face, so as not to disappoint the miners.

In overalls and wearing a helmet, he got on the miners' upper cablecar and descended to the face, which was eight kilometres deep.

Seeing Kim Jong Il at their workplace, whom they had long yearned to see, the miners shouted "Hurrah!" in excitement. Shaking their dusty hands casually, he said that he had come to see his comrades at work, and learned in detail about their lives and work.

Talking to the management of the mine that day, he instructed the officials to push ahead with ideological, technological and cultural revolutions, to effect a new upsurge in production, transform people's ideology, innovate technology and create new culture. He also gave the tasks of laying a large conveyor belt and establishing the pit communication and direction system and other tasks for increasing ore production as well as the methods of carrying them out.

The miners of Komdok, who were greatly encouraged by Kim Jong Il's field direction, worked hard to increase production, and carried out their Six-Year Plan quotas nearly one and a half years ahead of schedule, and were the first to raise the torch of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement in the whole country.

In this way, the Korean people carried out all the tasks of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and advanced vigorously, effecting a continued upsurge in the building of socialism.

NEW HISTORY OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE CAPITAL CITY

Pyongyang, the cradle of the Korean nation that is proud of 5,000 years of history and the heart of the Korean revolution, sprang up from ashes after the war in the 1950s and took on a new appearance of a modern city in the mid-1970s.

The new look of Pyongyang, which has been built centring around the bronze statue of Kim Il Sung on Mansu Hill, is the result of the energetic

leadership of Kim Jong Il, who worked hard to construct Pyongyang as the people's capital.

One day in March 1975, Kim Jong Il went over the master plan for the construction of Pyongyang, taking measures for a new phase in the construction of the capital city.

To the officials present, he said that the noble idea of President Kim Il Sung who loved the people warmly and devoted everything to them, and the people's unfailing loyalty to him, their desire to hold him in high esteem, must find expression in the construction of Pyongyang City.

Regarding the capital as the face of the country, and the heart of the capital as the face of the capital, Kim Jong Il emphasized that Mansu Hill and Nam Hill should be well laid out so that Kim Il Sung's bronze statue could be seen from any part of the city, and that modern buildings should be constructed in many places. With a coloured pencil he marked on the master plan the areas of the modern streets to be constructed, centring on Kim Il Sung Square, and the sites of public buildings, monuments and pleasure grounds.

Having explained his plan, Kim Jong Il asked the officials how long it would take to finish the project.

A designer answered that, according to his calculations of all the factors, it would take at least a few decades.

Kim Jong Il said, "No. I intend to finish the construction of the project by the 70th birthday of the leader."

"In seven years?" the designer asked in surprise.

He told the designer that the Party did everything it decided to do and that anyone who boldly got down to do something, thinking boldly, burning his heart with loyalty to the leader, could surely do it.

In those days, Kim Jong Il, in company with Kim Il Sung, inspected Ragwon-dong in Pothonggang District. Kim Il Sung instructed that a new street should be formed to be linked straight to Pipha Street by building 3,000 houses in that part of the city.

Kim Jong Il said to Kim Il Sung in a confident tone of voice that he would take charge of the construction of Ragwon Street, and called a consultation meeting to discuss the construction of high-rise apartment blocks for 3,000 families in Ragwon-dong. Thus the formation of a street which involved housing construction for 3,000 families started in an outlying district of Pyongyang.

Kim Jong Il received reports on the progress of the construction almost every day, and inspected the construction site frequently, helping to solve problems cropping up there with meticulous care.

When he was inspecting the construction site in June 1975, he looked into a flat under construction and instructed that every flat should be furnished with a set of furniture including an electric cooking pot, a refrigerator and a television set so that the people might live comfortably thanks to Kim Il Sung's solicitude. He added that since Koreans like to eat *kimchi,* space for *kimchi* jars should be provided on every floor.

While giving guidance to the construction site, he used to say, "Do the people like it?" or "What will the people say about it?"

He organized an exhibition of the samples of furniture to be provided in the flats, and made sure that the specialized furniture factories, enterprises and other institutions produced high-quality furniture as good as the samples and materials for the finishing touches, ceramic sanitary wares and metallic fittings.

As a result, Ragwon Street sprang up as the first street with high-rise apartment blocks in the capital, greeting the 30th anniversary of the founding of the Party.

In accordance with his construction plan and under his leadership, the Mansudae Art Theatre was built, and the Taesongsan Pleasure Ground was completed. The Changgwang Health Complex and the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital sprang up around that time, and the construction of the Grand People's Study House was nearly completed.

The construction of Changgwang Street highlighted the modernization of Pyongyang City. After finishing the construction of Ragwon Street Kim Jong Il unfolded another plan for building a new street which would represent Juche architecture by levelling Ryunhwanson Street in the central part of Pyongyang.

Ryunhwanson Street was a peculiar street that had copied a foreign design which was not suited to the customs of the Korean people and the situation in Korea. The street had been formed by factionalists lurking in the Party, and had gone against the Party's construction policy.

Kim Jong Il went to Ryunhwanson Street, accompanied by architectural designers. Afraid that the inspection of the street on a cold winter night might harm his health, officials suggested inspecting the street later on. But

he said, “No matter how rough our way, it can’t be rougher than the way the President had to follow in the days of postwar reconstruction. Construction is also a revolution, so we can’t avoid walking this way, can we?” He walked through the dark narrow back street where two-storey houses were tightly packed together.

Later, he examined the plan for street formation prepared by the officials concerned, and gave a new direction for this work on several occasions.

Kim Jong Il made sure that twenty- to thirty-storey apartment blocks were built in street, apartment blocks located harmoniously and in different forms so as to give three-dimensional feelings to the viewers, that each flat had three to four rooms furnished with de luxe furniture and articles for an adequate cultural life, and that kitchens were equipped with the latest utensils and ventilation devices.

Thus, a modern street sprang up in October 1980. Inspecting the completed flats, Kim Jong Il expressed satisfaction, saying that the construction and furnishings were good, and named the street Changgwang Street.

Kim Jong Il also made great efforts to construct provincial cities, towns and rural communities into good places for the people to live in. In the construction of these cities and towns, too, he made it a basic principle to build houses in which the people would feel comfortable, and saw to it that every city and town was constructed characteristically in accordance with its geographical conditions and the composition of the inhabitants, and that the working people were provided with wholesome and cultural living conditions.

His meticulous guidance benefited the reconstruction of Hamhung, Wonsan, Hyesan, Nampho, Samjiyon Township, Onsong Township and many other towns, and mining and farming villages.

4. FOR A FULL-SCALE INHERITANCE OF THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS

The new stage of the development of the revolution, in which the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea came to the fore, required the deepening of the work of inheriting the Party’s revolutionary traditions.

The revolutionary traditions are the historical roots of the Party and the revolution, the bloodline that links their generations, valuable wealth and a lasting cornerstone for the accomplishment of the Juche revolutionary cause.

Kim Jong Il regarded the inheritance and development of the revolutionary traditions as the basic guarantee for modelling the whole society on the Juche idea, and put great efforts into this work.

In March 1974, Kim Jong Il raised the slogan, "Let us produce, study and live like the and-Japanese guerrillas!"

He said:

"Party organizations must conduct education in the revolutionary traditions in close combination with practical activities, so that the Party's slogan, 'Let us produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!' can be thoroughly implemented, and that our Party's revolutionary traditions can be continuously brightened through practice."

This slogan raised by Kim Jong Il implies the Party's unshakable stand and revolutionary will to staunchly champion, safeguard, inherit and develop the glorious revolutionary traditions created by Kim Il Sung in the flames of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, and accomplish the Juche revolutionary cause pioneered by him.

With this slogan, Kim Jong Il encouraged all the working people to learn from the noble example of the anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners, who were unfailingly loyal to Kim Il Sung, and work, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas.

Under the slogan, "Let us produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!" he put great energy into the work of carrying forward and developing the revolutionary traditions in an all-round way.

His energetic leadership is highlighted in the following events:

○ When giving field guidance to the work of building the "Hall for Studying Comrade Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Ideas" in Sonbong County, North Hamgyong Province, in May 1974, Kim Jong Il indicated the method of improving the operation of the hall.

○ He gave field guidance to the work of developing the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site and the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlefield.

○ When giving field guidance to the "Museum of the Revolutionary Activities of Comrade Kim Il Sung" in North Hamgyong Province in

March 1975, he showed the way to sustain the characteristics of the revolutionary museum.

○ At a consultative meeting of the secretaries and department heads, and the latter's deputies of the Party Central Committee in May 1975, he explained the method of organizing work and life in a more revolutionary way by establishing a revolutionary tone of life in the whole society.

○ He gave guidance to making a new advance in study under the slogan "Let the entire Party study!" by popularizing the question-and-answer studying method.

○ He directed the writing and publication of *For the Freedom and Liberation of the People (in chronological order), Twenty-Year-Long Anti-Japanese Revolution under the Red Sunrays (*1 to 5), and other reminiscences and experiences of the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

○ He organized the first "1,000-*ri* Journey for Learning"[12] expedition in March 1974, and the "1,000-*ri* Journey for National Liberation"[13] expedition in January 1975.

○ In his speech, "Let Us Staunchly Defend the Politico-Ideological Unity and Purity of the Party down through the Generations", delivered at a meeting of the senior officials of the Organizational Leadership Department and the Information Department of the Party Central Committee in October 1976, he clarified the fundamental question arising in staunchly defending the revolutionary traditions with a correct attitude towards them.

○ He established a well-regulated system for collecting materials about Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities, and took various measures to preserve them for ever.

Kim Jong Il pressed ahead with the monumental work of preserving the old revolutionary battlefields and revolutionary sites, so as to give people objective lessons about Kim Il Sung's revolutionary history.

The construction of the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site and the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlefield was of special significance. The Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site is a historic place, where Kim Il Sung called a meeting on March 11, 1933, when he was in the Onsong area. At the meeting, he set forth the policy of extending the armed struggle into the homeland. Anticipating the 30th anniversary of the foundation of the Party, Kim Jong Il started the operation to construct the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site. When a decision of the Secretariat of the Party Central

Committee was adopted on this matter, he organized and sent a construction force, studied the blueprint for the formation of the revolutionary site on several occasions, and put forward the principles and methods of erecting great monuments. As a result, the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site was satisfactorily completed in one year and four months, and contributed greatly to the education of Party members and working people.

Kim Jong Il proceeded to the operation to construct the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlefield.

On the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the victory in the battle in the Musan area, he proposed constructing the Samjiyon Battlefield, and gave field guidance to this project, indicating the basic direction of the formation of the great monument, and leading the work in detail. As a result, the Samjiyon Battlefield was built as a temple of education in revolutionary traditions in a little over two years and a half by March 1979.

Having set an example through the completion of the construction of the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site and the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlefield one after another, Kim Jong Il continued to lead the construction of revolutionary sites. As a result, revolutionary battlefields and revolutionary sites were better constructed, and the whole country became a school for education in the revolutionary traditions.

This was a historic achievement made by Kim Jong Il in the work of burnishing the revolutionary traditions.

5. MODELLING THE ENTIRE ARMY ON THE JUCHE IDEA

THE ARMY OF THE LEADER, THE ARMY OF THE PARTY

Kim Jong Il put forward the policy of modelling the entire army on the Juche idea in his talks to the senior officials of the General Political Bureau of the Korean People's Army on January 1, 1975, and led the work of implementing this policy.

Modelling the entire army on the Juche idea means that all the soldiers are trained to become fighters who are unfailingly loyal to the Party and the

leader, and that the building and activities of the army are conducted thoroughly in line with the Juche idea. The general task of army building is to make the People's Army a perfect army of the leader and the Party, by modelling it on the Juche idea.

Kim Jong Il ensured that ideological education was given in a variety of forms and methods, on the principle of combining education in the principles of the Juche idea properly with different types of education, with the main emphasis on the education of soldiers in loyalty to the Party and the leader.

He raised the slogan, "Let us fight devotedly for the great leader!" and encouraged the soldiers to give loyal support to Kim Il Sung and have an unshakable stand that they recognize no one but Kim Il Sung. He arranged a meeting and a training course for the chiefs of information departments of the political departments of the army corps (services, arms), and divisions (brigades) of the Korean People's Army, and sent a letter in which he clearly explained how to improve the information work in the People's Army. He made sure that the outmoded patterns of formalism, stereotype and administrative method in the information work were eliminated, that all aspects of information work were switched over to the types used for encouraging front-line soldiers, that a well-regulated information system was established, and that all the information forces and means were used to do this work in a vigorous and fresh way.

Kim Jong Il encouraged the People's Army to conduct the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement and also the movement to learn from the examples of Kim Hyok[14] and O Jung Hup[15], so as to train all the soldiers to be unfailingly loyal to the Party and the leader, and accelerate the modelling of the entire army on the Juche idea with the Party's glorious revolutionary traditions as a lasting cornerstone.

Kim Jong Il pressed ahead with the work of strengthening the People's Army in terms of military technique to meet the requirements for modelling the entire army on the Juche idea.

He paid great attention to increasing the command ability of the officers of the People's Army and to strengthening its command and control system. He also induced the commanding officers to acquire the experiences of the anti-Japanese armed struggle and the Fatherland Liberation War, and to study foreign war experiences from the point of view of Juche. He took

measures to restructure the organization system of the People's Army and its operational command system to suit the Korean situation and to meet the requirements for modern warfare as well as the measures to enhance the level of unit management and the role of the staffs of different levels.

He clearly indicated the direction and content of the training of the People's Army, and induced all the soldiers to acquire rich military knowledge, the Juche method of war and superb marksmanship. In particular, he made sure that mountain training was intensified to suit the mountainous terrain conditions of Korea so as to master the tactics of mountain warfare and modern military skills as rapidly as possible.

He established the system of Party leadership over the People's Army. When he put forward the policy of modelling the entire army on the Juche idea, he already declared Party leadership to be the lifeline of the People's Army, and clearly showed the task and method of establishing the system of Party leadership over the People's Army.

Ever since the working class emerged on the historical stage, the revolutionary struggle for independence has continued. But the working class suffered failures and setbacks in the struggle when it neglected to strengthen its armed forces and failed to receive the correct leadership of the Party and the leader. The experience of the international communist movement has shown that the revolutionary armed forces can advance victoriously without twists and turns, and failures only when they receive the correct leadership of the Party and the leader. The founding of the Juche revolutionary armed forces in Korea and the history of their development have clearly proved this truth.

Kim Jong Il took many opportunities to give officials theoretical explanations about the meaning of Party leadership and about the relationship between the working-class party and its revolutionary armed forces. He made sure that the entire army moved as one under the leadership of the Party, implemented the Party's orders and instructions unquestioningly, and that all the organizational and political work in the army was geared to establishing Party leadership.

Thanks to his energetic leadership for the modelling of the entire army on the Juche idea, a new change took place in the work of building up the army, and the People's Army was strengthened as the army of the leader and as the army of the Party.

During the years when he was implementing the policy of modelling the entire army on the Juche idea, Kim Jong Il continued to give field guidance to the units and soldiers of the People's Army, visiting the front-line areas and rear areas, the sea and islands and everywhere, directing their combat and political training and combat preparations with meticulous care.

His outlook on the armed forces centring on the soldiers holds a special place in his outstanding qualities of military leadership. Regarding the soldiers rather than the weapons as the basic factor in victory, in other words, the soldier-centred doctrine that regards soldiers as the subject of the armed forces is precisely the man-centred outlook on the armed forces which is consistently maintained by him. The new soldier-centred outlook on the armed forces means the viewpoint that puts forward soldiers, the subject of the armed forces, the masters of warfare, not as a means of displaying the power of weapons but as the subject of military force, and lets them play the role of masters.

The "weapon-centred doctrine" has prevailed in the military circles of the East and West throughout history. Britain, which defeated the Spanish "Invincible Armada" and won the control of the sea in Europe, asserted the "fleet-centred doctrine." Germany, a continental country, adhered to the "tank-centred doctrine" and made the theatre of war a place of confrontation between tanks during the Second World War. Today, the United States puts forward the "air-supremacy doctrine" and is clamouring about the "nuclear-weapons-omnipotence doctrine." Those who believe in the "weapon-centred doctrine" have regarded soldiers merely as a human resource, as a means of operating weapons and as subordinate to them. In war, however, it is not weapons that fight; it is human beings that handle and use weapons. Weapons without human beings are no more than pieces of steel.

On the basis of the soldier-centred outlook on the armed forces, Kim Jong Il made preferential efforts to solve the question of the soldiers' ideology, and at the same time found solutions to the questions of military training and weapons and equipment.

He was outstanding also in military intelligence, strategy and military attainments.

One day, during an inspection of a rifle range of the People's Army, he watched the soldiers' target practice, explained to them the knack of a sure hit, and then gave them a demonstration lesson. He had ten glass bottles hung from the branches of a tree at a distance of 50 metres, and shot five of them to pieces in succession with his pistol. Then he changed his pistol to his left hand and shot the remaining five bottles to pieces at the same speed.

Once he inspected a tank unit. Pointing at a mountain in front, he asked the tank crews during a break in their training if they could drive their tanks over the mountain. Hearing their answer that they had to drive them round it, being unable to climb over the mountain, he told them that they should be able to overcome such slopes in Korea, which is very mountainous. He himself entered the driver's compartment of a tank and explained to them how to overcome a steep slope by setting the direction of driving according to the degree of slope and regulating the speed. Having learned about the depth of water that could be crossed by tanks, he instructed that the tanks should be modified to cross all rivers, large and small, and explained in detail how to modify them.

More than once he was admired by aircraft pilots and air-force commanders. One summer day at an airfield where an airplane was going to land, he was walking to and fro in front of the control tower, looking up at the sky where rain-clouds were gathering, threatening lightning and a downpour. It was dangerous for the plane that was going to land. Looking at the commanders, who were perplexed at the sudden change of weather conditions, he asked them in which direction the plane was to land. Knowing that it was going to land towards the north, he himself directed the landing of the plane with composure. With a decision to lead the plane to the south, not to the north, he walked towards the runway. At this moment lightning was flashing and a shower was pouring down in the northern sky. But a corner of the southern sky was open. No sooner had the plane landed safely than there was thunder and lightning in the southern sky as well. A moment's delay would have resulted in disaster. The aviation instructors appreciated that Kim Jong Il was a man of great clairvoyance.

One day, Kim Jong Il paid a visit to a naval base and discussed navigation with the sailors. Reading the complex naval chart and learning about the training of the sailors, he instructed the commander of the flagship to summon the other vessels close to the flagship with the intention of cultivating courage in the sailors.

As soon as the commander gave the signal, the other ships appeared like small dots here and there in the thick fog, and rapidly approached the flagship. As they came nearer, the commander prepared to give the signal to leave for the safety of Kim Jong Il.

Anticipating the commander's intention, Kim Jong Il forestalled him and told him to call the ships to come closer to the flagship. At the commander's signal, they approached both sides of the fast-sailing flagship alternately to the designated distance and then left. Kim Jong Il induced the other ships to close in boldly and at higher speeds, and then said that sailors needed strong will, courage and audacity, that since the crew of torpedo boats were a shock force fighting close to enemy ships, they would be unable to destroy the latter unless they were audacious, and that they needed fighting spirit to close boldly with large enemy ships, including aircraft carriers.

On another occasion, Kim Jong Il boarded a torpedo boat of a naval unit, and sailed through heavy seas. He directed the training of the naval vessels for a long time, emphasizing that sailors should be trained to cope with sudden large waves, in foggy situations and in night conditions, so that they could be prepared to destroy the enemy in any situation whatsoever.

Thus, Kim Jong Il prepared the sailors to be all-round fighters with a strong combat spirit.

He gave frequent field guidance to munitions factories, and made sure that weapons and equipment were improved and perfected, with the emphasis on increasing striking power and mobility to meet the requirements of the Juche method of war and to suit the Korean situation, and that handy, efficient and modern weapons suited to the soldiers' physical conditions and the terrain of Korea were produced.

With such unusual military intelligence and outstanding art of leadership Kim Jong Il wisely directed the combat and political training of the People's Army units and soldiers, and developed them into an unconquerable fighting force.

6. "LET US MEET THE REQUIREMENTS OF JUCHE IN IDEOLOGY, TECHNOLOGY AND CULTURE!"

THE THREE-REVOLUTION RED FLAG MOVEMENT

The ideological, technological and cultural revolutions are the basic strategic line of the Workers' Party of Korea, the line of building socialism and communism, put forward by Kim Il Sung.

In consideration of the requirements of the new and higher stage of the development of the revolution, when the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea came to the fore, as well as the need for the development of the situation to strengthen the motive force of the revolution politically, economically and militarily, Kim Jong Il gave energetic leadership to the work of carrying through the line of the three revolutions.

He put forward the slogan, "Let us meet the requirements of Juche in ideology, technology and culture!" in November 1975, in order to accelerate the three revolutions. This slogan represents the will and intention of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Korean people to accomplish the Juche revolutionary cause, and embodies their standpoint to meet the requirements of the Juche idea in carrying out the three revolutions.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to developing in depth the three-revolution team movement initiated by Kim Il Sung. Kim Jong Il extended the three-revolution team movement to all sectors of the national economy, established a well-organized system of directing the movement, strengthened the ranks of the three-revolution teams, and took measures to raise the level of their political and practical qualifications.

Kim Jong Il proposed the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement, a new form of mass movement. At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee he said that the Party had now proposed the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement in order to bring about a new upsurge in building socialism. Just as a great upswing was effected through the Chollima Workteam Movement, he emphasized, a new and great revolutionary upsurge should be effected in all sectors and units by carrying out the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement vigorously.

He saw to it that the Komdok General Mining Enterprise and the Chongsan Cooperative Farm raised the first torch of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement. In a little more than a month after that, the movement was started in all sectors–industry, agriculture, transportation, science, education, public health, and so on–and rapidly spread as a mass movement throughout the whole of society.

Kim Jong Il led all the Party organizations to develop the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement as an important task for the Party.

At a consultative meeting of the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, and the deputy heads of the Organizational Leadership Department and the Information Department of the Party Central Committee on January 1, 1976, Kim Jong Il clarified the matters of principle in developing the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement. Concerning the essence and central task of this movement, he said:

"The Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement is a new mass movement which makes good preparations for meeting the great revolutionary event, and accelerates the building of socialism and communism to the maximum by pressing ahead with the transformation of the people's ideology and the mass innovation movement in economic construction, cultural development and defence build-up through their organic combination on the principles of the speed campaign and ideological battle.

"The central task of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement is to accelerate the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions in an all-round way."

Kim Jong Il taught that since the three revolutions are a basic strategic task to be carried out continuously until communist society was constructed, it was necessary to set the stages of this movement properly, define the tasks of each stage correctly, and review and assess the results of the movement with care in order to develop it. Emphasizing the need for the Party organizations to always adhere to the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement as an important task and strengthen Party leadership for this movement, he made it clear that the Party's direct engagement in this movement and direct leadership of it were the major characteristics of the movement, which distinguished itself from the previous mass movements which had been led by the Party through the medium of working people's organizations.

Meanwhile, Kim Jong Il saw to it that written directions for the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement were circulated for mass debate in order to turn the movement into a movement for the masses themselves. He also ensured that meetings for sharing each other's experiences and demonstration lessons were organized, so that all sectors and all units developed this movement more effectively and at a higher level. He also induced the media to disseminate life experiences connected with this movement.

Kim Jong Il encouraged the vigorous development of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement in close combination with other mass movements.

One of the examples was the movement to emulate the unassuming heroes.

The unassuming heroes discovered by Kim Il Sung in early October 1979 were genuine communists who devoted themselves to the struggle for the Party and revolution, for the country and their fellow people, without aspiring to any honour or reward, and not caring whether their contributions were recognized or not.

Kim Jong Il got the mass media, including the Party paper, to give wide publicity to their examples so as to develop this movement as a Partywide movement and a movement involving all the masses. As a result, the movement to emulate the unassuming heroes quickly spread in all fields of socialist construction, effecting new innovations in economic construction and in science and technology, and bringing about a full flowering of the laudable atmosphere of working and living in a communist way in the whole of society.

The Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement gave a powerful impetus to an uninterrupted advance in the Korean people's ideological and moral lives, as well as in all fields of economic construction and cultural development.

"LET US LIVE OUR OWN WAY!"

Kim Jong Il launched a strategic slogan, "Let us live our own way!" and created the mode of revolution that is unique to Korea.

Live our own way, fight our own way, create our own way–these are important requirements for carrying through the Party's strategic line,

breaking through the difficulties on Korea's own initiative, accelerating the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea and accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche. Modelling the whole society on the Juche idea is a difficult and complex undertaking involving transforming nature, society and human beings as required by the Juche idea.

In order to carry out this task facing the Workers' Party of Korea successfully, it was necessary for the Party to establish Juche and find its own solution to all the problems arising in the revolution and construction.

Pressing ahead with the revolution and construction in the Korean way was also a pressing requirement of the prevailing situation in those days.

At a consultative meeting of the senior officials of the Organizational Leadership Department and the Information Department of the Party Central Committee on December 25, 1978, with a deep insight into the requirements of the developing revolution and the situation, Kim Jong Il said:

" 'Let us live our own way!'–this is exactly the strategic slogan our Party is launching as important today."

We have lived our own way in the past without copying foreign examples or following or relying on others; we have overcome many difficulties and trials, and achieved great victory in the revolutionary struggle and construction by our own efforts by advancing along the road indicated by the great leader under his leadership; we must live our own way in the future, too, no matter what others may do, he said.

A man who believes in himself will be a strong man, and a man who believes in others will be a weak man; a man who lives on his own strength will prosper, and a man who lives on the strength of others will perish, he once told officials.

Thinking and acting with one's own mind as required by the Juche idea and dealing with everything in the interests of the Korean revolution and the Korean people to suit the Korean situation and by one's own efforts–in short, living as required by the Juche idea–is the basic requirement of the slogan, "Let us live our own way!" put forward by Kim Jong Il.

To the senior officials of the Party Central Committee Kim Jong Il said, "Our way is the way of Juche. There is no better way than this. We must not discard our way to live in a foreign way, even if we are under pressure to do so. A man wearing clothes that fit him feels comfortable in acting and looks

fine. But if he discards his own clothes and wears borrowed ones he will feel uncomfortable and look unnatural. We must live our own way by all means. We must handle government affairs our own way, develop our economy and culture our own way and strengthen our defence power our own way."

Kim Jong Il's policy of living our own way provided the Workers' Party of Korea and the Korean people with a scientific method of speeding up the revolution and construction to hasten the achievement of the complete victory of socialism as required by the Juche idea and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche.

Kim Jong Il instructed that in order to live our own way it was necessary to strengthen the revolutionary ranks by efficient Party work and encourage the Party members and working people to display highly the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and carry out the Juche-oriented line of building socialism.

The Korean people started implementing the Second Seven-Year Plan in 1978. He wisely organized all the people in carrying out this plan under the slogan, "Let us display more of the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance!"

He had a letter sent from the Party Central Committee to its subordinate organizations and the Party members to encourage the Party membership and all the working people to turn out in carrying out the new long-term plan. Meanwhile, anticipating the 30th anniversary of the DPRK he organized a 100-day campaign and effected a new upsurge in all sectors of socialist construction.

On the basis of having made a breakthrough in carrying out the Second Seven-Year Plan, Kim Jong Il pressed ahead with the work of carrying out the major tasks of the new long-term plan. He put preferential efforts into increasing coal production and kindled the flame of the "drive for extra haulage on schedule and without accidents to implement the decision of the 18th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea" and ensured that the rail transport sector met the increasing demand of the national economy for transport with success.

Under the wise leadership of Kim Jong Il, strenuous efforts were made to live as required by the Juche idea in all fields of the revolution and construction, and the Second Seven-Year Plan was carried out successfully despite the complex situation at home and abroad.

THE SCIENTIST-TECHNICIAN SHOCK-BRIGADE MOVEMENT

With a plan to back up the work of Juche-orienting and modernizing the national economy and placing it on a scientific basis in the spirit of self-reliance with the latest achievements in science and technology, Kim Jong Il took important measures to combine scientific research work with production.

He brought about a great advance in the development of science and technology by activating the shock-brigade movement of scientists and technicians, a new method of combining scientific research work with productive practice.

He organized the "July 1 scientist-technician shock brigade," the first of its kind, and sent it to the Komdok General Mining Enterprise. The scientists and technicians who went to Komdok played the role of pioneers in the technological revolution. Kim Jong Il also sent shock brigades of scientists and technicians to the smelteries in Nampho and Munphyong. At the smelteries they were highly successful in putting production processes on a scientific basis by introducing new achievements in science and technology.

Kim Jong Il summed up their experiences on February 17, 1978, organized shock brigades of top scientists and technicians and sent them to important fields of the national economy.

He made it a rule to form shock brigades with scientists, technicians and designers with different specializations and introduce the latest achievements in science and technology into production to increase it to the maximum by the method of concentrated efforts with emphasis on finding solutions to the problems with which Kim Il Sung was deeply concerned. In this manner, the February 17 scientists' shock-brigade movement was developed.

Kim Jong Il kept himself regularly informed about the shock-brigade movement, and led it to success.

When the shock brigade sent to the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Works made a success of their research into the Juche-oriented method of iron production by collective efforts, and when the shock brigade working at a chemical works was making painstaking efforts, Kim Jong Il made sure

that the officials concerned paid close attention to their work in detail and extended to them all necessary assistance.

Kim Jong Il learned about all the successes achieved by the scientists and technicians who had been sent to the important fields of the national economy, and saw to it that "May 19 technological innovation shock brigades" were organized, including even the technicians and skilled workers of the factories and enterprises in all sectors of the national economy so as to accelerate the technological revolution. This was a step taken to make a new advance in the development of science and technology by applying Kim Il Sung's idea of strengthening creative cooperation among scientists, technicians and workers in the technological revolution. The formation of the "May 19 technological innovation shock brigades" resulted in the combination of scientific research with the mass technological innovation movement, and brought about a fresh upsurge in production.

Later, Kim Jong Il renamed the "May 19 technological innovation shock brigade" the "April 15 technological innovation shock brigade" in the hope that all the scientists, technicians and workers would display more fervent loyalty to Kim Il Sung in carrying out the revolution in science and technology. In addition, he ensured that a well-organized administrative system for directing science and technology was established to control and lead the work of the technological innovation shock brigades in combination with the technological revolution undertaken by the three-revolution teams. The system covered the administrative hierarchy from top to bottom–from the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council down to factories and enterprises. As a result, a large number of valuable technological innovations were introduced into various fields of the national economy, and solutions were found to many problems in economic construction.

Highly appreciating the successes made by the scientists and technicians, Kim Jong Il saw to it that the titles of labour hero, people's scientist and merited scientist, as well as the science prize and the new technological innovation torch prize were awarded to them.

All the successes in the scientific and technological revolution were the fruition of the leadership given by Kim Jong Il, who organized and led the scientist-technician shock brigades, encouraged the scientists and

technicians to display their loyalty and creative enthusiasm to the maximum and make advances in the development of science and technology and in the technological revolution in Korea.

A GREAT FLOWER GARDEN OF JUCHE ART AND LITERATURE

On the basis of the success achieved in the art and literature revolution, Kim Jong Il further enriched the flower garden of Juche art and literature.

Giving leadership to the work of art and literature, he paid special attention to the description of the leader. In his university days he had made it clear that the question of describing the leader was the core and lasting lifeblood of art and literature. After he came to work on the Central Committee of the Party, he put forward the creation of the leader's image as the central task in the development of new revolutionary literature under the slogan, "Let us develop new revolutionary literature!" In order to carry out this task, he led the creative workers and artists of the April 15 Literary Production Unit and the Paektusan Production Unit to describe Kim Il Sung in a more profound way.

Examining the work of the April 15 Literary Production Unit, he led the writers to systematize Kim Il Sung's revolutionary history into a cycle composed of great novels and named it "Immortal History." When the manuscript of *The Dawn of Revolution* was finished, he went over the large volume all through the night and gave the writer detailed advice about the seed, composition and mood of the work, and even about the events and words, and made sure that the work was perfected as an epic masterpiece that described Kim Il Sung's early revolutionary activities.

He continued to encourage the production of *The Arduous March, At the Foot of Mt. Paektu, The Theatre of Fierce War, Spring at the Base,* and other works of the cycle, and ensured success in describing Kim Il Sung who had organized and led the anti-Japanese armed struggle to victory.

In his speech, *For the Further Development of Our Juche-oriented Art,* addressed to the officials of the Information Department of the Party Central Committee and the officials in the field of culture and art in May 1975, Kim Jong Il explained in detail the tasks and methods of developing art onto a higher stage, and roused the creative workers and artists to a creative upsurge.

He proposed the production of the revolutionary film, *Flames Spreading over the Land,* by paying close attention to describing Kim Il Sung's image on the screen. This film dealt with Kim Il Sung and the struggle of Kim Hyong Gwon and Kang Pan Sok to implement Kim Il Sung's Juche-oriented revolutionary line. As a result, the first revolutionary film that showed Kim Il Sung's image on the screen was produced.

Drawing on the experience of the creation of the revolutionary film, *Flames Spreading over the Land,* Kim Jong Il led the production of the revolutionary films, *Far Away from the Headquarters, In the First Armed Unit,* and *Mt. Paektu,* which were followed by the production, under his guidance, of the multi-part film, *Star of Korea,* and its continuation, *The Sun of the Nation,* dealing with the whole of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities.

Kim Jong Il also gave wise guidance to the revolution in drama in order to produce new revolutionary dramas to meet the requirements of the Juche era.

In early November 1972, Kim Jong Il inspected the State Theatre, and put forward the policy of creating new revolutionary dramas suited to the Juche era, explained the matters of principle in creating new revolutionary dramas, and instructed that the writers and artists should make full ideological and artistic preparations to produce revolutionary dramas. Later, he gave them the task of presenting *Mountain Shrine* on the stage, and gave detailed guidance for its creation.

He taught that the germ of an idea of *Mountain Shrine* was that one must believe in one's strength, and explained in detail the need to smash the old patterns in dramatic composition and the formation of scenes and to present profound and extensive aspects of characters' lives.

He also explained the aspects of satirical display, instructing that the satirical play, like all other kinds of drama, should deal with the logic of life, bringing laughter and deep thought to its audience.

He helped the actors and actresses to discard their habit of affected acting and improve their narrative skill so that they could become masters of narrative.

As far as the stage art was concerned, he ensured that the successful three-dimensional art for revolving stage which had been used in *Sea of Blood*-type opera was also applied to drama as suited to dramatic quality,

and that music was introduced in drama to serve as a powerful means of highlighting the personalities of the characters and stimulating the dramatic development.

He watched a preview of the revolutionary drama, *Mountain Shrine,* and expressed his satisfaction with the drama, that had been perfected and made into a masterpiece. This was followed by the presentation of *Blood at an International Conference, A Letter from a Daughter,* and *Three Pretenders* on the stage under his guidance, ushering in the heyday of revolutionary drama.

Kim Jong Il also put great efforts into the development of music, dance and the circus.

He put forward the policy of giving weight to the performance of music-and-dance ensemble in stage art and innovating its contents and forms by eliminating stereotypes, so as to give variety to them in keeping with the national characteristics and the Korean people's modern aesthetic tastes. He gave frequent guidance to the production of a music-and-dance tale, *The Song of Paradise,* by the Mansudae Art Troupe, and helped them to perfect it.

Kim Jong Il made sure that the Party's policy on establishing Juche and combining physical culture and art in acrobatic creation was implemented so as to unfold a world of exquisite acrobatics, ranging from balancing acrobatics, in-the-air acrobatics and light acrobatics to juggling.

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership, art and literature came to a full flowering in the 1970s, and a great flower garden of Juche art and literature thrived in Korea.

7. WITH A CHERISHED DESIRE FOR NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

Regarding as his motto Kim Il Sung's instruction that no communist and no nationalist of Korea could say that he had fulfilled his duty to the country and the nation if he handed down the country still divided to posterity, Kim Jong Il pressed ahead with the struggle to break through the difficulties and trials in the way of national reunification and realize the reunification of the country, the greatest cherished desire of the nation.

In the struggle for national reunification, Kim Jong Il adhered to the

three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity proposed by Kim Il Sung in 1972.

He has given energetic leadership to the struggle to implement the three principles of national reunification since the publication of the July 4 North-South Joint Statement[16].

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee under the title, *Let Us Resolutely Struggle to Implement the Three Principles of National Reunification,* on July 14, 1972, Kim Jong Il analyzed in detail the situation at home and abroad created after the publication of the July 4 joint statement, and said that in the struggle for national reunification the major effort should be directed to the implementation of the three principles of national reunification proposed by Kim Il Sung and confirmed by the north-south joint statement.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to the dialogue between north and south in order to carry out the three principles of national reunification. He told the officials concerned that we need dialogue for reunification, not for division, and told them to bring the south Korean authorities to the negotiation table by any means.

The immediate task of forming and operating a coordinating committee as defined in the July 4 joint statement was being delayed because of the double-dealing policy of the south Korean authorities in those days, and the north-south preliminary Red Cross talks, which had started in September 1971, failed to reach agreement.

Kim Jong Il told the delegates to the north-south preliminary Red Cross talks that the south Korean authorities were dampening the trend to reunification, talking about "dialogue accompanied by confrontation" after they had signed the joint statement. He clarified the matters of principle to be maintained in the talks, and set the task of proceeding quickly to full-dress talks.

Meanwhile, Kim Jong Il attached great importance to the political struggle to maintain and carry through the three principles of national reunification. He got the media to expose the real nature of the developments in south Korea during one month after the publication of the joint statement and to condemn the treachery of the south Korean authorities through a press campaign.

As a result, full-dress Red Cross talks started in August 1972, and the

north-south coordinating committee for high-level north-south talks met in October the same year. This was a great success in breaking down the barrier between north and south and opening the way to travel between the two parts of Korea.

Also in the latter half of the 1970s, he worked hard to bring about wide-ranging talks between north and south. As a result, political parties and public organizations in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea held a joint conference and adopted a letter to the south Korean political parties, public organizations, people of different sections of the population and overseas compatriots, appealing to them to hold north-south political negotiations, and made various proposals on their own initiative.

The south Korean authorities, however, answered that "settlement of peace" was more urgent than reunification, laying artificial obstacles in the way of reunification, and prevented dialogue and contact by holding large-scale military exercises.

The north-south dialogue again came to a deadlock. Nevertheless, the whole process of the dialogue made a great advance in opening a new phase of national reunification, and stimulated the nation's ardent desire for peaceful reunification.

4

(OCTOBER 1980–DECEMBER 1989)

1. A NEW MILESTONE FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF PARTY AND THE REVOLUTION

THE SIXTH PARTY CONGRESS

Having fulfilled the tasks set forth by the Fifth Party Congress by vigorously promoting the three revolutions–ideological, technological and cultural–the Workers' Party of Korea and the Korean people were able to hasten the complete victory of socialism and energetically promote the transformation of the whole of society in accordance with the Juche idea. Around this time the 19th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee, held in December 1979, decided to convene the Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea in October 1980.

Kim Jong Il vigorously organized and led the preparations for the Sixth Party Congress with the idea of making it a festival which would sum up the exploits performed by the Party and provide a new milestone for the Juche cause.

He encouraged Party members and other working people to greater political enthusiasm and labour achievements by issuing the slogans of the Party Central Committee and made sure that the political foundation of the revolution was consolidated more firmly by strengthening the Party ranks and solidly uniting all the masses behind the Party. Moreover, he organized the 100-day campaign to fulfil the national economic plan for 1980 ahead of schedule before the Party Congress, and organized and mobilized the whole Party and all the people for this campaign. He also organized and led the work of building monumental creations.

Attaching great importance to the work of preparing the documents for the Congress, particularly to that of drafting Party Rules, Kim Jong Il

devoted profound thought and great efforts to put them on a high political and ideological level.

Drawing on the achievements and experience he had gained in Party work, he formulated the character and guiding ideology of the Workers' Party of Korea in connection with the Juche idea created by Kim Il Sung, and defined the ultimate goal of the Party to be that of imbuing the whole of society with the Juche idea. Moreover, he gave detailed guidance so that the Party Rules contained important matters of principle in Party building and activities, such as the matter of strengthening the unity and cohesion of the entire Party in ideology and will based on the Juche idea, as well as that of adhering to the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions as the general line of the Party in the building of socialism.

Kim Jong Il conceived a plan of holding on a large scale the events celebrating the Sixth Party Congress and the 35th anniversary of its founding and devoted tireless thinking and energies to ensure that everything was done on the highest level. This can be well seen from what he did from the afternoon of the 5th of October that year, just ahead of the Party Congress.

In the afternoon of that day Kim Jong Il directed the dress rehearsal of the mass gymnastics display, titled *Under the Banner of the Party,* at the Moranbong Stadium (the present Kim Il Sung Stadium), gave field guidance to Pyongyang Department Store No. 2 and the Korean Central News Agency, and inspected the newly completed Changgwang Street. Furthermore, he gave advices on the matters relating to the demonstration of the working people of Pyongyang City at Kim Il Sung Square. Following this, he gave field guidance to the construction site of the Grand People's Study House at dawn, and went to the April 25 House of Culture to take care of the preparation of the meeting hall. He returned to his office at 5 am the next day, read through the documents drawn up in preparation of the Party Congress, and viewed a new feature film.

The Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea opened in Pyongyang on October 10, 1980, amid the expectations and absorbing interest of the Korean people. It was attended by the representatives of the WPK, many Party and government delegations and delegates and public figures of various social sectors from 118 countries. At the Congress, Kim Il Sung made a report on the work of the Party Central Committee. In his report, he summed up the victories and experiences gained in the

revolution and construction during the period under review, proclaimed the imbuing of the whole of society with the Juche idea to be the general task of the Korean revolution, and fully elucidated the tasks and ways for its accomplishment.

The Congress elected Kim Jong Il Member of the Presidium of the Political Bureau, Member of the Political Bureau, Secretary of the Central Committee, and Member of the Central Military Commission, of the Workers' Party of Korea.

The Congress unanimously adopted the Party Rules prepared by Kim Jong Il.

The Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea was a historic one which provided a new milestone in strengthening and developing the Party into a party of Juche for ever, and in consolidating the foundation of the Party which would make it possible to accomplish, from generation to generation, the revolutionary cause of Juche.

THE COMPLETION OF THE LAYING OF THE PARTY'S FOUNDATION

Kim Jong Il solved an important problem arising in the succession to the revolutionary cause by continuing to promote energetically the work for laying the foundation of the Party.

Laying the foundation of a party is a fundamental question which should be adhered to for ever in the course of its building, and is essential for improving its leadership in the course of revolution and construction.

This is particularly important at a time when the problem of the succession to the revolutionary cause presents itself.

Closely considering the importance of the work of laying the foundation of the Party in succeeding to the revolutionary cause, Kim Jong Il put forward the policy of laying it already in February 1974, and promoted the work for its realization. As a result, great success was achieved in this work in the 1970s. Nevertheless, this did not mean the completion of the work.

Only when a strong foundation of the Party was laid was it possible to step up the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea to meet the requirements of a higher stage of the revolutionary development and hasten the complete victory of socialism.

Kim Jong Il clarified the guiding principle for continuously intensifying the work of laying the Party's foundation at the consultative meeting of the senior officials of the Department of Organizational Leadership and the Department of Information of the Party Central Committee and the Pyongyang City Party Committee in December 1980, and at the consultative meeting of chief secretaries of provincial Party committees in April 1981. Kim Jong Il said that in order to lay a strong foundation for the Party it was imperative to build the ranks of cadres in accordance with a far-sighted programme, establish revolutionary discipline in the Party so that it acts in a body, improve the consciousness of the importance of the Party organization among its members and intensify their Party life.

In laying the Party's foundation he paid primary attention to building, on a long-term basis, the ranks of cadres with people who were unfailingly loyal to the Party.

He ensured that all Party organizations built the cadres' ranks with those old, middle-aged and young people who were ready to share the fate of the Party for ever, regarding their loyalty as the main thing.

Directing the work of laying the Party's foundation, Kim Jong Il devoted great efforts to establishing revolutionary discipline in the Party whereby it acts as one and getting the Party members to improve their consciousness of the importance of the Party organization and their Party life.

He paid special attention to making all cadres and Party members loyally support the Party's leadership. He put forward the slogan "Let us become the Kim Hyoks and Cha Kwang Sus[17] of the 80s!" and made sure that officials followed the example of those young communists who, at the dawn of the Korean revolution, had held Kim Il Sung in high esteem as the centre of unity and loyally supported him.

In particular, he reposed great trust in cadres, the leading figures in the revolution, and encouraged them to live and work as truly loyal supporters of the Party.

One day, he made earnest remarks to the following effect, after a discussion with officials:

Trust is essential for winning comrades, and love is indispensable for the establishment of comradely relations. Trust is, at the same time, love. Comradely relations start with trust and are consolidated by faith. Comrades

overcome difficulties and trials together, and share joy and sorrow and the same destiny. They must share a common fate for ever once they have taken up the common cause. We who serve the Juche cause are comrades. Let us work together, I trusting you as my comrades and you believing in me as your comrade.

Some time later, he told officials: One must not flatter the powerful and become a faithless man who acts as the circumstances change and vacillates with the wind. One should follow a man out of respect for him, not because of his high position. One must know and love a man. It is only when one loves and trusts one's comrades in a fully human way that one's faith can become firm and one can have a sense of obligation. If one remains true to one's faith and sense of obligation to be loyal, one will become a loyal man, but if one discards them, one will be a traitor.

On many occasions, when he met veteran revolutionary fighters Kim Jong Il earnestly told them to live as genuinely loyal men to the end even though they were old, and that they should never become political has-beens. This was because he wanted them, people who had begun their lives as loyal men, to end their remaining lives as such.

One day, he got together with some officials. Among them were people in their forties and fifties, and some who were nearly 70. He addressed them to the following effect: I am anxious that you who have worked accompanying Comrade Kim Il Sung for a long time, are growing older and older. What is important is to maintain your loyalty even in old age. You should be tigers, not jackals. In other words, you should become truly loyal men, not political incompetents. Loyalty must be in direct proportion to age, not in inverse proportion to it. Only then will you become genuine officials who are unfailingly loyal to the Party and the revolution to the end.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's warm comradeship and careful education, cadres, Party members and other working people cherished as their unshakable faith and sense of obligation their commitment to wholeheartedly supporting and following the Party, and the revolutionary habit of staunchly defending and implementing the Party's policies prevailed throughout society.

Kim Jong Il paid profound attention to the improvement of the work with the working people's organizations to educate and train all the working people, the younger people in particular, into genuine revolutionaries of a

Juche type unfailingly loyal to the Party and the leader.

He was determined to make a new advance in the development of the youth movement and, on the occasion of the Seventh Congress of the League of Socialist Working Youth that was convened in October 1981, the year following that of the Sixth Party Congress, he put forward the slogan "Let us become the dependable young vanguard of the Workers' Party of Korea!" and gave the League of Socialist Working Youth the honourable name "young vanguard."

From that time on, the Korean youth movement entered a new stage of development in its efforts to succeed to and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche, and all the young people supported and defended the Party and the leader at the cost of their lives, admirably discharging their role as the vanguard and shock brigade in socialist construction.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to the work of the General Federation of Trade Unions and the Union of Agricultural Working People.

He sent a letter, titled *On Improving the Work of the Trade Unions,* to the national short course of officials of the trade unions in May 1984, in which he clarified the specific tasks for stepping up the modelling of the whole society after the Juche idea by increasing the role of the working class, the leading class of the revolution, as the vanguard. And in December 1985, he sent a letter, titled *On Stepping Up the Work of the Union of Agricultural Working People,* to the national training course for the officials of the Union of Agricultural Working People and expounded the tasks arising in pressing ahead with the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions in the rural areas. Thus, he ensured that the organizations of the General Federation of Trade Unions and the Union of Agricultural Working People, comprising wide sections of the working people, made a great leap forward in their work by increasing their functions and roles.

At the same time as he pressed ahead with the work of laying the Party's foundation, Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into developing in depth the Juche-oriented theory of Party building and the necessity of building the Party in accordance with a far-sighted programme.

He published the treatise *The Workers' Party of Korea Is a Juche-Type Revolutionary Party Which Inherited the Glorious Tradition of the DIU* on October 17, 1982, the 56th anniversary of the founding of the Down-with-Imperialism Union. In this treatise he summed up the law-governed process

and historical experience of Party building, and gave a complete elucidation of the theoretical and practical problems arising in building the Party on a long-term basis.

Kim Jong Il clarified the essential character of the Workers' Party of Korea. He defined it as a party which is built and carries out its activity guided by the Juche idea, a party which has firmly established a monolithic ideological system throughout its own structure and is united solidly, based on the Juche idea, a steel-hardened party with a strong organization and discipline, a party which fights to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche by maintaining close ties with the masses and increasing the effectiveness of their role–a Juche-type revolutionary party.

On the basis of his profound analysis of the Party's position and role in carrying out the cause of socialism and communism, Kim Jong Il said that the Party must be built on a long-term basis. He stressed that the imbuing of the whole Party with the Juche idea was a fundamental question that should always be adhered to in the course of the building of the Party, and clarified the tasks for its realization.

Kim Jong Il's work became a theoretical and practical weapon which must be adhered to in splendidly accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche and a banner which showed the road ahead for the building of a working-class revolutionary party. Moreover, his work powerfully inspired people to engage in the struggle to realize the cause of independence.

2. HIGHEST INCARNATION OF LOYALTY

LASTING GRAND MONUMENTS

On the occasion of Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday, Kim Jong Il conceived a plan to make Kim Il Sung's greatness and revolutionary achievements remembered for ever and shine more brightly. He proceeded to organize and lead the work for its realization.

He regarded the work of handing down Kim Il Sung's revolutionary achievements for the country and the people to posterity as a matter of the utmost importance.

He conceived a plan to erect the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch

of Triumph in Pyongyang on the occasion of Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday.

He examined the designs and sand tables of the formation of the tower and arch several times, and gave specific guidance so that even a single detail was made on the highest level, not to speak of their scales, forms and contents.

He told the officials concerned to build the Tower of the Juche Idea in the form of a beacon tower, make the beacon on the top of the tower emit flames even at night, and erect in front of the tower a sculpture of three people–holding up the emblem of the Party–a worker, a peasant and an intellectual. He said that the tower should be built on the bank of the Taedong River opposite Kim Il Sung Square, the centre of Pyongyang. Furthermore, he said that the Tower of the Juche Idea should be 170 metres high, including the beacon.

Kim Jong Il said that the Arch of Triumph should be built on the street in front of Kim Il Sung Stadium at the foot of Moran Hill, where Comrade Kim Il Sung made a speech on his triumphal return to the motherland in 1945, and that it should be made in a Korean style embodying both national form and modernity. He said that the hymn *Song of General Kim Il Sung* and a panoramic view of Mt. Paektu should be engraved on the arch, and the dates "1925-1945" carved in relief, reflecting the period from the time when Comrade Kim Il Sung had started on his "1,000-*ri* Journey for National Liberation" until he returned in triumph after liberating the country.

Having confirmed the direction of the formation of the monuments, Kim Jong Il ensured that a shock brigade of Party members was organized to carry out the projects in accordance with the decision of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee on erecting the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph.

When the building of the tower and arch started, the entire Korean people rendered an active assistance to these projects. The people in south Korea, overseas Korean compatriots and people in various overseas countries, too, sent, in support of the building of the Tower of the Juche Idea, rare and precious high-grade stones on which various messages were engraved.

At last, the building of the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph was completed with the 70th birthday of Kim Il Sung near at hand.

Following this, Kim Jong Il proposed the reconstruction of the Moranbong Stadium on modern lines. This is a stadium associated with the historical revolutionary site where Kim Il Sung made a speech at the ceremony held in celebration of his triumphal return to the motherland.

He visited the construction site of the stadium, solved the problems arising at the final stage of its construction and said that the stadium should be named Kim Il Sung Stadium. The stadium was completed four months after its reconstruction started.

A GRAND POLITICAL FESTIVAL

Kim Jong Il dedicated himself body and soul to make the celebrations of Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday a grand political festival.

He ensured that the First Session of the Seventh Supreme People's Assembly being held in Pyongyang a few days before April 15 that year was made the beginning of the celebrations of Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday.

He proposed the creation of the music and dance epic *Song of Glory* by 5,000 artists. He gave instructions for its completion and guided this work by personally visiting the site of its creation.

He said that the history of Comrade Kim Il Sung's 70-year-long revolutionary activity should be grouped into each decade to express the phases of each period and that the latter's revolutionary history should be shown as a whole by inserting famous pieces of music. Thus this music and dance epic was completed as a masterpiece showing Kim Il Sung's revolutionary history.

Kim Jong Il also ensured that the mass gymnastics display *The People Sing of the Leader* by 50,000 young people, students and schoolchildren, a soiree and a joint performance by Korean artists and artists from abroad were conducted in an original way.

On April 13 that year, when the holiday was near at hand, Kim Jong Il guided, on the spot, the previews of the mass gymnastics display and soiree for the last time.

Thanks to his guidance, the celebrations of Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday were held successfully.

The year 1982, which marked Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday, coincided with the 40th anniversary of Kim Jong Il's birthday. The Central People's

Committee of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea promulgated a decree on conferring the title of Hero of the DPRK on Kim Jong Il in honour of his 40th birthday.

On February 16 that year Kim Il Sung gave a luncheon at the Presidential House in honour of Kim Jong Il's 40th birthday, and made a congratulatory speech.

Indeed, the year 1982 was a historic one associated with noteworthy events in the history of the Workers' Party of Korea.

A LIBRARY OF THE JUCHE IDEA

Kim Jong Il developed in depth the Juche idea evolved by Kim Il Sung, and exalted it as the guiding ideology of the era of independence.

On the basis of his study of the contents constituting the fundamental principles of the Juche idea and its quintessence, he integrated and systematized Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea with new principles and contents, in keeping with the requirements of the present era and those for the development of the revolution, and comprehensively developed it in depth.

The work in which Kim Jong Il integrated and systematized the Juche idea theoretically and developed it in depth, is the treatise *On the Juche Idea,* which was sent to the National Seminar on the Juche Idea on March 31, 1982.

In his treatise, he systematized the contents of the Juche idea as follows:

1. The Origin of the Juche Idea
2. The Philosophical Principle of the Juche Idea
3. The Socio-Historical Principles of the Juche Idea
4. The Guiding Principles of the Juche Idea
5. The Historic Significance of the Juche Idea

Kim Jong Il not only fully integrated and systematized the principles of the Juche idea, he also provided a profound scientific elucidation of theoretical and practical problems arising in stepping up education of the Party members and other working people in the Juche idea and establishing the Juche-based outlook on the revolution among them.

In his work *On Some Problems of Education in the Juche Idea* published in July 1986, he again clarified that the Juche idea is an idea

leading the Korean revolution to victory and elucidated the essence of education in the Juche idea as well as the tasks and ways for conducting, in combination with the basic principles of the Juche idea, all forms of ideological education such as education in the principles of the Juche idea, education in loyalty, education in the Party's policies, education in the revolutionary traditions, class education and education in socialist patriotism.

Kim Jong Il published the work *On Establishing the Juche Outlook on the Revolution* in October 1987. In this work, he explained that since the motive force of the revolution is the integral whole of the leader, the Party and the masses, shaping a correct outlook on the leader, the organization and the masses was a prerequisite for establishing a correct outlook on the revolution. He said that the establishment of a genuinely correct outlook on the revolution required that it be fortified by the outlook on morality and become one's outlook on life. Moreover, he pointed out that an important matter here was the establishment of the revolutionary outlook on the leader, and emphasized that to this end it was imperative to have the correct understanding that the leader is the centre of the life of the socio-political community.

Kim Jong Il's works, including the treatise *On the Juche Idea,* became a powerful theoretical and practical weapon in fully imbuing Party members and other working people with the Juche idea.

3. A FRESH ADVANCE IN ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION

CREATION OF THE "SPEED OF THE 80S"

Kim Jong Il organized and led the movement to create the "speed of the 80s" with a view to making a new advance in socialist economic construction.

Effecting a fresh advance in socialist economic construction was an urgent requirement for successfully achieving the ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction advanced by Kim Il Sung at the Sixth Party Congress and hastening the complete victory of socialism.

Kim Jong Il convened a consultative meeting of the senior officials of

the Party Central Committee to bring about an advance in economic work and stressed the need to make another great upswing in socialist economic construction.

He put forward the slogan "Let us create the 'speed of the 80s' in the spirit as displayed during the great Chollima upswing!" and advanced the policy for all sectors and all units to conduct the movement for creating the "speed of the 80s."

The movement for creating the "speed of the 80s" is a mass movement for making a great advance in socialist economic construction by succeeding to the revolutionary spirit displayed by the Korean people in the period of the great Chollima upswing and embodying the principle of the speed campaign.

Kim Jong Il convened the Meeting of the Front-rankers of the Chollima Movement, the National Meeting of Young Activists and other meetings of various branches of the national economy to encourage the Korean people to create a new speed, and ensured that an example of the "speed of the 80s" was created in the building of Dressing Plant No. 3 of the Komdok General Mining Enterprise.

He made sure that a three-dimensional campaign was conducted in all processes of the building of the dressing plant by organizing a powerful construction force and that the entire Party, the whole country and all the people were mobilized to help the project. Thus, the enormous construction project was completed in only one year. In the course of this, a model of the "speed of the 80s" was created.

Drawing on this success, Kim Jong Il continued to step up the movement for creating the "speed of the 80s."

Paying profound attention to meeting the rapidly growing demand for iron and steel, he started out on his journey to give field guidance to the major iron production bases.

He visited the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Works in May 1984. Inspecting its major production processes, he inquired into the stumbling blocks in maintaining a steady rate of production. He discovered that they were the shortage of cold rollers and concentrate.

Having made up his mind to solve this problem, he continued his journey of field guidance, heading for the Musan Ore Mine. Upon his arrival at the mine, he told the officials there: "I called at the Kim Chaek

Iron and Steel Works yesterday. The officials and workers there said they would increase iron production if only they were provided with enough concentrate. I told them not to worry about concentrate, for I trust you, miners of Musan." Then he asked them what was needed for increased production of concentrate.

The officials of the mine told him that rotary drills were needed to give priority to the removal of overburden and mine large quantities of iron ore, and expressed their desire for the prompt importation of drills for which a contract had been concluded with a foreign country.

Having heard their proposal, Kim Jong Il, resolved to instil the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance in them, ensured that a nationwide drilling competition with rotary machines was held at the Musan Ore Mine.

After a short time, the competitors, who had gathered from all parts of the country, more than doubled the efficiency of the homemade rotary drills by improving the mechanical parts. In the course of this, the officials of the mine became confident that they would be fully able to solve the problem of iron ore production which had seemed difficult to them.

Kim Jong Il said that the cold rolling mills needed by iron works should be produced at home in order to fully meet the increasing demand for rolled steel. He visited the workers of Ryongsong to solve this problem.

He gave them the task of making a 10,000-ton press in the following year, marking the 40th anniversary of the founding of the Party, in the spirit in which they had made a 6,000-ton press. In response to this, they succeeded in making a 10,000-ton press for the first time in the history of Korea's machine industry.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to the production of a large-sized oxygen plant.

In those days, the production of such plant in Korea was very important in the development of the machine industry. Nevertheless, this was not easy.

Kim Jong Il gave this task to the workers of Ragwon Machine Factory, putting his trust in them. Then he examined the master plan for the construction of a subsidiary factory of the plant and its bird's-eye view, organized a powerful construction force and took all the necessary measures.

He visited the Ragwon Machine Factory in October 1984, and, inspecting the subsidiary, he repeatedly praised the workers there.

A short time after his visit to their factory, the workers of Ragwon succeeded at last in making a large oxygen plant with their own technology and efforts. This was another revolution in the development of Korea's machine industry.

Kim Jong Il also guided even minute branches of industry related to the improvement of the standard of living of the people, not to speak of the key industries, the leading sectors of the national economy.

Paying deep attention to the production of daily necessities for the people, he arranged a Pyongyang City exhibition of light industrial goods, and inspected it on August 3, 1984. On display at the exhibition were various goods made by daily necessities workshops at factories and enterprises, home production cooperatives, workteams of housewives, workteams producing goods through the utilization of various materials in the trading sector, and home workers.

Having inspected the exhibits thoroughly, he gave the relevant officials detailed instructions on producing consumer goods through a mass movement, supplying them through direct sales shops and making all goods as fine as the prototype products. Then he gave them the task of, first of all, setting up direct sales shops in all the districts and counties of Pyongyang City by the end of the year. With this day as a turning point, the beacon of the mass movement for the production of "August 3 consumer goods" flared up, and direct sales shops selling these goods were set up in all the cities, counties and districts throughout the country. As the beginning of the movement for the production of "August 3 consumer goods," a new mass movement in Korea, this made a great contribution to effecting a revolution in light industry and improving the standard of living of the people.

In the days when the "speed of the 80s" was created, Kim Jong Il wisely led great projects to transform nature aimed at carrying out Kim Il Sung's plan.

He ensured that major efforts were concentrated on the construction of the West Sea Barrage in carrying out the nature-harnessing projects.

The construction of the West Sea Barrage was a large-scale project to wall off 8 km of the sea where high and low tides occur twice a day, and build on it a large dam with three locks and scores of sluices.

Kim Jong Il organized a leadership force capable of providing unified guidance for the building of the barrage as well as a technical force, formed

a construction force with soldiers trained and experienced in socialist construction and machinery, and established the system of providing the equipment and materials needed for the building of the barrage on a preferential basis. Moreover, he organized a maritime shock brigade specializing in operations at sea and many other shock brigades, and ensured that the whole country did its best to contribute to the construction of the barrage.

Kim Jong Il visited the construction site of the West Sea Barrage on a number of occasions, and wisely guided the construction work.

On the spot, he clarified the main direction of the project and the ways for speeding it up, such as by boldly introducing a new, Juche-oriented method of construction and conducting a speed campaign. Thus, he ensured that a new leap forward was made in the construction of the barrage as a whole. Furthermore, he made sure that more machinery and equipment were sent and that the senior officials of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council and other senior officials concerned from the capital and provinces held on-site consultative meetings, and adopted measures for the timely supply of the necessary equipment and materials. He also met and congratulated the innovators who had performed labour feats in the construction of the barrage, and encouraged all of them to become heroes by working still better.

The West Sea Barrage was successfully built in a matter of only five years, with Korean design, technology and materials thanks to Kim Jong Il's audacious and large-scale plan and superb direction.

Under the leadership of Kim Jong Il, the Korean people carried out the Second Seven-Year Plan by conducting the movement to create the "speed of the 80s" in all fields of the national economy, and started to execute the Third Seven-Year Plan in 1987.

In February 1988, Kim Jong Il proffered the policy of conducting a 200-day campaign by the 40th anniversary of the founding of the DPRK on the basis of the successful accomplishment of the tasks for the first year of the Third Seven-Year Plan, and led it to victory.

He put forward the slogan "Let us all live and struggle like heroes!" and inspired Party members and other working people to new heroic feats. He suggested that the National Meeting of Heroes call for another 200-day campaign.

Thanks to his leadership, an advance was made in production and construction during the 200-day campaign.

The days during which the "speed of the 80s" was created and the new long-term plan was carried out were also the days when a great advance was made in the work of completely putting into effect the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question.

At the same time as he ensured that the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions were stepped up in the rural areas, Kim Jong Il advanced the slogan "I tend the farm's fields as my own" and encouraged all farmers to work with the attitude of the master responsible for the granary of the country.

Upholding Kim Il Sung' s great plan for transforming nature, Kim Jong Il energetically organized and directed the construction of 800-km-long irrigation channels for completely solving the problem of water needed for farmland in the western area of Korea and the newly reclaimed tidal flats. Thus, the irrigation of the rural economy was completed on a still higher level, and Korea was turned into a country of irrigation.

TO MEET THE REQUIREMENTS OF JUCHE IN ECONOMIC MANAGEMENT

Kim Jong Il sagaciously led the work to embody the Juche-oriented socialist economic management system.

He channelled great efforts into improving and perfecting the industrial guidance system in order to implement the Taean work system[18] which had been created by Kim Il Sung and the validity and vitality of which had been verified in practice.

He ensured that the ranks of senior officials were filled with people having economic knowledge, and that the manager, Party secretary and chief engineer were at one with one another and managed their enterprises efficiently. He also made sure that factories and other enterprises enforced the self-balancing system properly within the bounds of the integrated state plan, to correctly combine the interests of the state and the producer masses.

He inspected the University of National Economics in June 1989, and told the officials concerned and the lecturers and scholars of the university that the country's economic work would go smoothly if the Taean work

system was implemented fully and a steady rate of production was maintained. He emphasized the need to manage the economy in keeping with the requirements of the Taean work system.

Later on, in his letter *Let Us Firmly Equip Ourselves with the Theory of Juche-oriented Socialist Economic Management* sent to the teaching staff and students of the University of National Economics on the 45th anniversary of its establishment, he fully clarified all the problems arising in socialist economic management, starting from its basic principles and extending to its system and methods.

In his letter, he said that the Taean work system was an ideal form of economic management, representing the present and future of socialist and communist construction, and the prototype of communist economic management.

He pointed out:

"The historical experience in the solution of the matter of socialist economic management indicates that there is not and cannot be any other better economic management system for socialist economic construction than the Taean work system. We must feel great pride and self-confidence in having the most advantageous socialist economic management system, and staunchly defend and fully apply the Taean work system, the Juche-oriented socialist economic management system, without any vacillation no matter what wind may blow."

With such a resolve, he ensured that the machinations of the imperialists and bourgeois revivalists to turn the socialist economy into a capitalist market economy were frustrated and that the Juche-oriented industrial management system was resolutely defended and put fully into effect.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to consolidating and developing the socialist agricultural system established by Kim Il Sung.

At a meeting of the Secretariat of the Party Central Committee, and on a number of other occasions, he referred to the need to consolidate the socialist agricultural system based on collectivism. He stressed that agriculture should be managed by a socialist method based on collectivism to transform it into a more modernized and industrialized large-scale communist economy.

He determined to solve the rural question finally on the basis of the achievements and experience of Kim Il Sung, who had already set up state-

owned integrated farms in Sonbong and Ryongyon counties, and consolidated and developed them, and on the basis of the idea of the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question, and took measures to turn cooperative ownership gradually into all-people ownership.

CONSTRUCTION OF HOUSES FOR 50, 000 FAMILIES

Kim Jong Il organized and directed the construction of large streets and houses to improve the appearance of Pyongyang as the capital of the revolution and provide more modern and secure living conditions for the people.

In the 1980s, large-scale housing construction in Pyongyang was carried out on Munsu and Puksae streets, and the endeavour reached its height on Kwangbok Street.

Kim Jong Il examined the blueprint several times and urged the planners to design Kwangbok Street boldly and on a large scale, on the principle of originality and avoiding repetition so that it could be perfect and exemplary in all respects.

Thanks to his guidance, the blueprint for large-scale Kwangbok Street was completed. According to it, the avenue was to be 100 metres wide; on both sides of the avenue houses of different storeys were to be built in various shapes to suit the terrain–square, cylinder, flag, folding screen, and wing; each household was to be provided with complete sets of furniture and kitchen utensils; each section of the street was to be provided with a network of public service facilities; modern flyovers were to be built on the avenue; the roadways, zebra crossings and green belts were to be made wide and pleasing, to provide the utmost convenience for the people.

In January 1986, Kim Jong Il ensured that the start of the construction of Kwangbok Street was proclaimed.

He established a well-organized unified command system and ensured that all-out three-dimensional operations were conducted in the construction of the street.

He clarified the method of carrying out all construction processes, including clearing and landscaping, simultaneously through all-out three-dimensional operations while giving priority to road building, resolutely doing away with conventional practices. Then he visited the construction

site, and directed the builders to complete all the structures at the highest level.

Thanks to his plan and energetic guidance, the construction of Kwangbok Street, equal to building an entire town, proceeded rapidly and was completed in a matter of only three years. During this period, the construction of the projects for the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students, including Youth Street, which is a sports village, and the May Day Stadium was also conducted successfully.

Following the construction of Kwangbok Street, Kim Jong Il proposed the building of Thongil Street, and pushed ahead with it.

At the beginning of November 1989, he summoned senior officials of the Party Central Committee, and said, "I intend to build 50,000 houses in all in Pyongyang by building 30,000 new houses by the 80th birthday of the leader and completing those that have already been prefabricated on Kwangbok Street and those under construction in the city."

In accordance with his intention, the construction of houses was conducted on a full scale. The builders speeded up the construction work under the slogan "Let us build this street as we did Kwangbok Street!"

The whole process of housing construction on Kwangbok Street and then Thongil Street was a proud one which demonstrated the grandeur of Kim Jong Il's large-scale building operations.

4. UNDER THE BANNER OF THE CULTURAL REVOLUTION

EDUCATIONAL REVOLUTION

Kim Jong Il wisely led an educational revolution to implement the Theses on Socialist Education advanced by Kim Il Sung and make an advance in public education and in the training of technicians and specialists, in keeping with the requirements of the developing revolution.

In his letter *On Further Developing Educational Work,* addressed to the National Meeting of Educational Activists on July 22, 1984, Kim Jong Il said as follows:

"We must bring about a revolution in education to meet the new

requirements of the developing revolution, and so improve school education as a whole and raise its quality appreciably so that the new generation will be well trained to become useful revolutionary workers and so that our education will better contribute to the development of science and technology and to socialist economic construction in our country."

In his letter, he defined, based on the fundamental principles of the Juche idea, the essence of socialist education as an undertaking to transform man into a powerful being, and fully elucidated the content of the educational revolution and the way to carry it out.

Taking into close consideration that, if the training of the younger generation was slowed by one step, the advance of the country would be slowed by ten steps, he energetically led the work to carry out the policy of the educational revolution.

He ensured that a model unit for improving the quality of senior middle school education was set up and its example generalized throughout the country.

He gave field guidance to the newly built Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 on April 28, 1984. While inspecting the educational facilities and other amenities, he gave instructions to bring about a qualitative change in senior middle school education by creating a model for improving basic education and spreading it, and fostering fine students. He emphasized that for improving the quality of senior middle school education it was necessary, in particular, to compose the content of school education correctly, draw up a proper teaching programme and fill the ranks of teachers with competent people.

He ensured that political and ideological education was improved in general secondary schooling and that the curricula were reasonably composed so as to improve instruction in the basic sciences and the rudiments of engineering, the teaching of foreign languages, education in the arts and physical education, to shape the framework of a revolutionary world outlook among the students and train them still better as communists with a wide range of knowledge, noble morality and strong physiques.

Kim Jong Il, paying close attention to the intellectual education of young people, gave on-the-spot guidance to the Grand People's Study House one day. He told the officials there that he had read the biographies of many of the world's renowned heroes in his boyhood, and that he still remembered them

vividly. He called on them to publish many books for children in the form of anecdotes about or biographies of famous explorers, inventors, heroes, writers, musicians and painters. Moreover, he sent to the study house lists of books intended to foster in children reasoning and application ability and creativity. Later, while inspecting children's books edited by various publishing houses, he instructed the officials concerned to produce a large number of such books and send them to nurseries, kindergartens and schools, sell them in bookshops and give wide publicity to them via TV.

He clarified the direction and ways of raising the scientific and theoretical level of higher education, and consolidating and perfecting the technical education system in keeping with the requirement of the changing situation.

He ensured that Kim Il Sung University and other major universities were further built up and that their work was revitalized still further to improve the training of technicians and specialists. Furthermore, he saw to it that the teaching programmes of these universities were improved in keeping with the immediate requirement of socialist construction and world trends in science, laboratory equipment and practical study modernized, the work of the doctoral institute improved and the educational and scientific force strengthened.

Kim Jong Il ensured that factory, farm and fishermen's colleges were increased, to train a larger number of field engineers equipped with a high level of technical qualifications needed in various branches of the national economy, the work of the TV University improved and the role of the Grand People's Study House enhanced to make a great contribution to improving the working people's cultural level and technical skills and assimilating the whole society to the intelligentsia.

As a result, the network of regular education, including universities and colleges, was built still better and large numbers of technicians and specialists, including some winning master's degrees and doctorates in their twenties and thirties, were trained.

RAISING SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY TO WORLD STANDARDS

Kim Jong Il vigorously accelerated the work of developing the country's science and technology.

The Korean people had to develop science and technology rapidly if

they were to achieve successfully the ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction by making the best possible use of the existing economic foundations and allow full play to the superiority of the socialist system.

Kim Jong Il resolved to raise the country's scientific and technological standards to new heights in the shortest possible time, clearly perceiving the developments in science and technology and the current requirements of socialist construction.

In his speech *On the Further Development of Science and Technology* made to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on August 3, 1985, he elucidated the tasks and ways of developing science and technology onto a higher stage.

The major tasks he put forward in this regard were to solve the scientific and technological problems with regard to raw materials, fuel and power, and modernization of machinery and equipment, improve research into putting the process of production techniques, production methods and management activities onto new scientific foundations, develop basic sciences and open up the new frontiers of science and technology.

Kim Jong Il paid primary attention to making all the officials acquire a correct attitude towards science and technology.

Moreover, he took measures for the solution of the scientific and technological problems urgently needed for the country's economic development.

He ensured that advanced science and technology were introduced to suit Korea's situation through improving scientific and technological information, and that scientific and technological exchanges with various countries were stepped up through active participation in the work of international organizations such as the World Intellectual Property Organization.

He made sure that the 11th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee proposed the task of putting the country's science and technology onto a world level in the shortest possible time and discussed it seriously, and that a national meeting of persons with academic degrees or titles, a national meeting of inventors and a national scientific and technological festival were held to increase the sense of responsibility and enthusiasm of scientists and technicians.

He visited the State Academy of Sciences and scientific research institutes, inquired about the research work of scientists and technicians and solved the difficult problems they faced, encouraging them to achieve success in their scientific research. He convened a consultative meeting of the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council in the field, and gave instructions for the rapid development of the country's science and technology.

At the meeting, he said, "Science and technology must be developed rapidly if the country is to be prosperous. Our country will be prosperous if we channel our efforts into their development, even if only from now on. Our prospects are bright."

Later, he visited the State Academy of Sciences several times. Emphasizing repeatedly the need to attach importance to science and technology, he clarified the specific tasks and ways for raising the country's science and technology to a higher stage as soon as possible by developing all the major scientific fields such as electronics, metallurgy and laser engineering.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's energetic guidance, an upswing was brought about in Korea's science and technology, which developed towards the forefront of the era and proved their great effectiveness in socialist economic construction.

FURTHER EFFLORESCENCE OF ART AND LITERATURE

Kim Jong Il gave guidance for the development of Juche-oriented art and literature in keeping with the requirements of the developing situation at the same time as consolidating the success achieved in the golden age of art and literature in the 1970s.

In his letter, titled *For the Further Development of Juche-oriented Art and Literature,* sent to the participants of the national meeting of active cultural workers and artists in March 1981, he set forth the tasks for raising art and literature to a higher level.

He emphasized the need to continue the work of translating the masterpieces written by Kim Il Sung into various forms of artistic and literary works. Further, he elucidated specific tasks arising in all fields of art and literature such as cinema, opera, drama, music and dance, fine arts and

acrobatics, as well as detailed ways for carrying them out.

He proposed and directed the construction of the mock-up "location" streets.

In December 1981, he inspected the streets, which were near completion, and solved all the problems, small and large, that had cropped up. Thanks to this, the streets were completed on the occasion of the 1982 annual February holiday, to celebrate his birthday.

Kim Jong Il set forth the task of making *Blood at an International Conference* into a *Shrine*-style revolutionary drama, and led this work. Following this, he ensured that *A Letter from a Daughter, Three Pretenders* and *Celebrations,* created by Kim Il Sung during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, were adapted into *Shrine*-style dramas and staged.

Moreover, he perfected the opera *The Tale of Chunhyang* as a model piece of national operatic art, and opened up a new path for the creation of Korean-style national operas.

Kim Jong Il also gave detailed guidance for the creation and performance of many music and dance epics, such as *Song of Glory* and the grand performance *Song of Happiness,* which involved a cast of 5,000, and thus brought about a proud and bumper harvest of stage arts.

Kim Jong Il also directed close attention to the development of the art of dance.

Clearly perceiving the trends in the development of the art of dance and its actual situation, he organized a research group to make practical dance notation, and indicated detailed direction and ways for the study of dance notation. When this study was completed, he ensured typewriting, printing and telex transmission to support it by modern technical means. Thus, the alphabet-type dance notation was completed in February 1987. The creation of the dance notation was a revolution in the development of the art of dance and a noteworthy event in the history of the world's art and literature.

Kim Jong Il also devoted himself to the creation and development of original electronic music.

Paying close attention to maintaining the noble musicality of the electronic ensemble, he valued the budding talent of the master singers who had distinguished themselves at a national musical contest for children and trained them into competent soloists having unique individuality. Moreover, he took care of the performers so that they could play folk songs, classical

music and modern music with electronic instruments having various tone colours. The Pochonbo Electronic Ensemble and the Wangjaesan Light Music Orchestra organized and trained by Kim Jong Il won great admiration from the people at home and abroad for their pleasant songs, original techniques and performance skills and the lively movements of the dancers.

Later, Kim Jong Il ensured that a multipart-feature film, *The Nation and Destiny,* was made with the song *My Country Is Best* as the idea to portray the life of the heroes in depth, thus providing a profound representation of patriotism.

The Nation and Destiny made a great contribution to achieving the grand unity of the nation.

Kim Jong Il published the works *On the Art of the Drama, On the Art of Dance, On the Art of Music, On Fine Arts* and *On Juche Literature* by theoretically systematizing and crystallizing the successes he had achieved in the course of leading and developing art and literature.

These works became a guideline to be adhered to in further developing art and literature.

FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH AND PHYSICAL CULTURE AND SPORT

Showing profound concern for public health and physical culture and sport, Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into them.

He gave guidance for establishing the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital, the South Hamgyong Provincial Stomatology Hospital and many other hospitals in various parts of the country, and accelerating the modernization of the health service and the work of putting it on a scientific basis.

He gave instructions for the public health sector to implement the Party's policy on preventive medicine, and improve medical care and doctors' qualifications.

He advised public health officials that doctors should work conscientiously for the health of the people because they were responsible for it.

Kim Jong Il sent a letter, titled *On the Further Improvement of the Health Service* to the participants in the National Conference of Health Workers in April 1985.

In his letter, he pointed out that improving the health service was an urgent requirement of revolutionary development, and said that they had to improve health care, consolidate and develop the people-orientated health service, and see that medical benefits from the state reached the people more effectively.

He said that in improving medical services it was important to improve hygiene and anti-epidemic work to prevent diseases and environmental pollution, as well as to provide timely and adequate information about cleanliness and hygiene, and strengthen the district medical care system. He emphasized that it was imperative to improve the way diagnosis and treatment were carried out and raise the standard of specialization in medical services and that medical workers must have a higher sense of responsibility and enhance their role. He also pointed out the need to develop medical science and technology, and improve the training of health workers and the provision of materials for and guidance of health service.

He told health workers that doctors' devotion was an "effective and famous medicine" and led them to implement the Party's policy on health service correctly. Moreover, he mobilized helicopters and naval vessels, and sent competent medical workers and expensive medicines to save the lives of people involved in near-fatal accidents. Among them was a girl in Jungsan County who was digging up clams on a beach when a tidal wave swept her out to sea on an ice floe, and she was rescued a few days later by a plane sent by Kim Jong Il. Others were some young people who were endangered by rising floodwaters while engaged in building a railway bridge on the Chongchon River, and were also rescued by a plane sent by Kim Jong Il. He was delighted at reports of the birth of triplets and quadruplets, regarding it as a good omen for the country's prosperity, sending gifts of silver daggers to the male babies and gold rings to female babies.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to the development of Korea's physical culture and sport endeavors.

He organized the April 25 Sports Team in June 1972, and gave guidance to develop all sporting events continuously with the team as a model.

As a result, Korea produced a world table-tennis "queen" and world champions and winners of Olympic gold medals in various events such as shooting, boxing, wrestling and gymnastics at international games such as

world championships, Olympic games, Universiads and Asian games.

At the end of November 1985, when brilliant successes had been recorded in the annals of Juche-oriented physical training and sports, there was held the National Meeting of Sportsmen. After this meeting, the Korean people showed greater interest in physical training and sports, and conducted sporting activities more vigorously.

In May 1986, Kim Jong Il gave instructions, titled *On Popularizing Physical Training and Sport and Developing Sporting Skills Rapidly,* to the officials in this field.

He said that in order to implement the Party's policy of making physical training and sports popular and part of the everyday life of the people it was imperative to intensify physical education at school and improve physical training and sports at institutions, enterprises and on cooperative farms and, at the same time, develop to the full the sports month campaign and the movement to create model sports counties.

He pointed out that the physical training and sports sector must develop sporting skills in keeping with the trend of the development of modern sporting skills, and thus raise Korea's standards to the world level as quickly as possible. He said:

"We must develop sporting skills strictly in accordance with the actual conditions in our country and the requirements of our people, and introduce advanced sporting skills from other countries also on this principle. By so doing, we will develop physical training and sports which serve our people and our revolution, and will perfect our own sporting skills and tactics and our own training methods."

Kim Jong Il paid profound attention to providing sports facilities in keeping with the people's growing demand for physical training and sports, and the rapid development of sporting skills, and ensured that the May Day Stadium, the Yanggakdo Football Ground, the Sosan Football Ground and a large sports village were built in Pyongyang. He gave instructions to equip the sports village with a volleyball gymnasium, a basketball gymnasium, a handball gymnasium, a table-tennis gymnasium, a combative sports gymnasium and an indoor swimming pool complex. It was to be built on Chongchun Street in the Mangyongdae area. Following this, he saw to it that a Taekwon-Do Hall was built on Chongchun Street, that Taekwon-Do and rhythmic gymnastics were widely popularized throughout the country,

and that physical training for national defence and traditional Korean sports were actively encouraged. He also ensured that a large number of gymnasiums were built in provinces, cities, counties and districts to make a great contribution to the development of physical culture and sports.

In the course of developing physical culture and sports as a mass movement with the main stress on physical education in schools, Kim Jong Il gave guidance for the creation of such mass gymnastics displays as *Under the Banner of the Party, Song of Korea* and *The People Sing of the Leader*, with the mass gymnastics display *The Era of the Workers' Party* as a model, and perfected all the works to make them masterpieces which have their own characteristic features and which are appealing to the people, thus opening up a great flower garden of mass gymnastics displays.

5. TRAINING THE PEOPLE'S ARMY TO BECOME INVINCIBLE

In the days of leading the building of the People's Army, Kim Jong Il placed great confidence in all its servicemen, starting from generals to officers and soldiers, and directed them to carry out, with a due sense of responsibility, their duty assigned by the Party.

Today the People's Army demonstrates its might as a "one-matchs-a-hundred" army. This is not only thanks to its armament and the power of orders but also to the benevolence of Kim Jong Il who shows great trust and love for the officers and men of the People's Army.

His trust and love are an inexhaustible source of strength and nutriment in strengthening and developing the People's Army into an invincible revolutionary force.

Kim Jong Il held up as models, and put great trust in, the veteran fighters who had fought since the days of the anti-Japanese war as well as the senior commanding officers in the army.

A ceremony of conferring military titles and orders on commanding officers of the Korean People's Army was held in the Mansudae Assembly Hall on April 13, 1985. Present there were veteran fighters of the anti-Japanese war, senior officers of the Ministry of the People's Armed Forces and commanders of the services and arms and other commanding officers of

the Korean People's Army who had rendered great service to the strengthening and development of the People's Army and to national defence.

Kim Jong Il was present at the ceremony, and conferred military titles and orders on the Minister of the People's Armed Forces and commanding officers.

That day at the ceremony he made a speech, titled *Let Us Make the People's Army Invincible.*

In his speech, he clarified the important tasks for further strengthening the People's Army until it became an invincible one capable of countering any enemy provocations by carrying out the Party's military line.

He said that the source of the invincibility of the People's Army was its political and ideological superiority, and that what was most important here was the comradely unity of the revolutionary ranks. He pointed out that the commanding officers should firmly arm the soldiers with the revolutionary idea of the Party, encourage them to defend politically and ideologically the Party Central Committee led by Kim Il Sung, and unite the whole army rock-solid behind the Party and the leader. Moreover, he said that commanders and all other officers and men should be firmly united in ideology and will on the basis of loyalty to the Party and the revolutionary cause and revolutionary comradeship, and value and love each other in the spirit of the unity between the officers and men. He stressed that the commanding officers of the People's Army should have the indomitable revolutionary spirit of giving their lives unhesitatingly in the fight for the Party and the revolution, and encourage all the servicemen to fight for the Party and the revolution, for the homeland and the people even at the cost of their lives, with a high degree of class consciousness and ardent patriotism. He also emphasized that all the soldiers should master the Juche-oriented war method created by Kim Il Sung and modern military science and technology to meet the characteristics and requirements of modern warfare and improve their qualifications radically so as to discharge their duties proficiently. In addition, he stressed, the commanding officers of the People's Army should have a revolutionary and people-oriented style of leadership.

Pointing out that the Party and the people expected a great deal of the People's Army, Kim Jong Il said:

"The commanding officers of the People's Army, its hard core, should defend the revolutionary posts entrusted to them by the Party with a lofty sense of responsibility so that this army can carry out its mission successfully as the defender of the Party and the revolution."

He met the commanding officers of the People's Army from time to time, explained to them the importance of their duty and urged them to prove themselves worthy of the Party's great trust and expectations.

Kim Jong Il saw that political and ideological work was pushed forward with stress on the work of uniting the servicemen around Kim Il Sung and the Party.

He stressed that only when the system of Party leadership was established in the whole army would it be possible to strengthen and develop the People's Army as the army of the leader and the Party for all time. He went on to say that doing so was the consistent policy of the Party and his unshakeable principle in building the armed forces, and that making the whole army breathe and act in accordance with the Party's idea and intention and be true to the leadership of the Party was aimed, in the long run, at further strengthening the People's Army as the army of the leader and the army of the Party.

He said that in order to set up the system of Party leadership, military discipline should be established in the whole army on the basis of the correct outlook on the Party organization. He remarked that this was the way to establish the command system under which all servicemen would act as one on the orders of the Party Central Committee and to enable the People's Army to discharge its mission and duty as the army of the Party.

Kim Jong Il's teachings on the need for establishing military discipline on the basis of the outlook on the Party organization became a highly important guide based on a deep analysis of the lesson of the complicated annals of the People's Army and the banner to be adhered to by this army in the cause of its building for all time.

In fact, the history of the People's Army is one of tireless struggle to establish military discipline throughout its ranks, based on the outlook on the Party organization. Both the anti-Party factionalists, who were exposed and eliminated after the war, and military bureaucrats, who were unmasked and wiped out at the end of the 1960s, had run amuck to emasculate revolutionary military discipline in the People's Army.

The Party removed such traitors and schemers from the revolutionary ranks without delay in the course of the struggle to set up in the People's Army military discipline based on the outlook on the Party organization.

Kim Jong Il also expounded detailed ways of establishing military discipline in the whole army on the basis of the outlook on the Party organization. He instructed the officers and men to do in accordance with the Party's intention all work such as the work of enhancing the functions and role of the Party organizations and political organs in the People's Army, the work of arming the servicemen with the Juche idea and encouraging them to enhance their appreciation of the organization and improve their organizational and ideological life, the work of intensifying combat training, setting up iron military discipline and improving logistical services in the units.

An important principle of leadership to the army, the principle Kim Jong Il formulated and expounded, is to realize the unity of the Party and the army, and combine military and political affairs satisfactorily.

Kim Jong Il said that it is necessary to closely combine military and political affairs, and that this implies that military commanders and political workers should be united in ideology and will when discussing and carrying out the military tasks facing the units. Moreover, he explained that the combination of military and political affairs was a matter of firmly ensuring Party leadership in the army and uniting the whole army behind the Party. He said that this was a matter of policy which should be invariably adhered to in the building of the revolutionary armed forces of the working class.

He said that for the proper combination of military and political affairs, military officers and political workers should improve the consultation system. He saw to it that political workers put military commanders to the fore and ensured their work through Party channels and in a political way from the rear, and that iron military discipline and the system of command under which soldiers unconditionally obeyed the orders of commanders were set up in the units, thus ensuring that all work was directed to increasing the combat efficiency of the People's Army in every way. Furthermore, he ensured that the spirit of unity between officers and men and unity between the army and the people prevailed in the army.

Kim Jong Il awakened the commanding officers of the People's Army to the great importance of their duty, and led them to unite the Party and the

army and closely combine military and political affairs. As a result, the People's Army was further strengthened, and developed as the revolutionary armed forces of the Party.

6. TRUST AND LOVE

REVOLUTIONARY OBLIGATION

Kim Jong Il always respected the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters, the first generation of the Korean revolution, and those officials who had been unfailingly loyal to the Party and the revolution after Korea's liberation. He bestowed great trust and invariable comradely love on them.

In the history of the international communist movement, there have been many instances of juniors slandering and debasing their seniors. Should this be allowed to take place unchecked, the revolutionary tradition will be ignored, the revolutionary cause initiated by the leader will not be carried forward and the lifeline of the revolution will be broken.

Telling officials of this lesson of the history of the international communist movement at every opportunity, Kim Jong Il said that there would never be such a thing in the Workers' Party of Korea for decades or several hundred years. He always respected and held up the revolutionary predecessors, and took care of their work and life. He also saw that care was taken of the health of the veteran anti-Japanese fighters living on pensions, so that they were kept healthy and that they were sent to sanatoriums for recuperation every year.

He placed great trust in and bestowed all possible care upon O Jin U, a man belonging to the first generation of the Korean revolution, who had fought in company with Kim Il Sung since his days in Wangqing in the early 1930s.

Kim Jong Il said that O Jin U, Minister of the People's Armed Forces, was Kim Il Sung's comrade-in-arms who had grown up under the care of the latter and had fought for a long time in company with the latter. He used to say that O Jin U was inseparable also from his own history, and had assisted him loyally. Kim Jong Il went to Mt. Paektu accompanied by O Jin U, and together they took part in important meetings held in the capital. He

got O Jin U to accompany him during his visits to foreign countries, during his field guidance in the provinces and when inspecting new buildings under construction. Moreover, Kim Jong Il frequently phoned him to assign tasks to him and solicited his opinions with regard to work. He sincerely looked after O Jin U so that the latter could discharge his heavy responsibilities.

At the Sixth Party Congress, Kim Jong Il got O Jin U to take a seat by his side and, from time to time, cordially told the latter about the problems which had cropped up in the course of the Congress.

Seeing this, the prime minister of a certain African country once asked Kim Il Sung with curiosity what the relationship between Kim Jong Il and the Minister of the People's Armed Forces was, for they were on such exceptional terms.

Kim Il Sung told him with a smile that their relationship was that between the Party and the army.

The prime minister nodded, greatly moved. With regard to this fact, Kim Jong Il later said to the senior commanders of the People's Army that there was no country like Korea where the Party and the army were so closely linked to each other and that there were no such revolutionary armed forces which were as loyal to the Party as the Korean People's Army.

In the hope that O Jin U would remain youthful and would continue the revolution full of fighting spirit and passionate enthusiasm, mentally returning to his youth, Kim Jong Il presented a "wedding table" on the former's 60th birthday, instead of a 60th birthday banquet, and said that the former should defend the Party firmly with arms.

Kim Jong Il also bestowed great trust and love on Choe Hyon[19]. When the latter found it difficult to discharge his duties as the Minister of National Defence because of a serious illness, he said that Choe Hyon's presence by his side itself inspired him with confidence and strength, and sent him tonics and took measures for him to be treated with a hot-spring cure at a scenic rest centre. When Choe Hyon was critically ill, Kim Jong Il took every possible measure for the former's treatment. Moreover, he visited him when he was bed-ridden, and was anxious about how to prolong the former's life span at least a little. Saying that he was a loyal soldier who had supported the Party and the leader with arms in his lifetime military service, he organized the production of the feature film A *Revolutionary,* which

describes some parts of Choe Hyon's life so that he would remain alive in the hearts of the Korean people.

Appointing an anti-Japanese veteran to an important post of the People's Army, Kim Jong Il emphasized that for the veteran anti-Japanese fighters to educate the rising generation in the revolutionary spirit of Mt. Paektu, teach them excellent combat methods and strengthen the power of the army in every possible way was a matter of great importance that would decide the future of the Party and the revolution. He also said that priority should be given to the work of establishing the Party's leadership system in the entire army.

Just as he took the utmost care of and treasured the veteran fighters, so did they show great reverence for him. They sincerely supported him as the great leader who would lead the Party and the people.

In mid-June 1983, when Kim Il was bed-ridden because of a serious illness, he was informed that Kim Jong Il was arriving at the Pyongyang Railway Station after a visit to China. He got out of bed with great difficulty, and asked his wife to help him dress. His wife tried to dissuade him, saying that he was too ill to go out, and that Kim Jong Il would be worried if he saw him walking with the help of a cane.

Kim Il replied, "It would be different if I were dead. But as long as I am alive, how can I remain in bed waiting for him to come to see me? If he notices I am missing from the officials receiving him, he will rush directly here. I can't trouble him at a time when he probably already feels tired." He went to the station with the help of a cane and greeted Kim Jong Il.

Kim Il, who had worked with Kim Il Sung for over half a century, called his eldest grandson to his bedside a week before his death, and said, "You must do your utmost to be faithful to Comrade Kim Jong Il to the last. Just as I have worked long for Comrade Kim Il Sung, you must be loyal to Comrade Kim Jong Il."

Kim Jong Il has taken care of the veterans of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle as well as the old officials, heroes and labour innovators who worked faithfully for Kim Il Sung in different periods–the days of building a new country after liberation, the Fatherland Liberation War, the days of the Chollima grand upsurge after the war, etc–and exalted their socio-political integrity.

He sent Ho Tam[20] on his 60th birthday, a notebook in which he wrote

that the Korean revolution would be ever-victorious along its long, long road.

When he heard the news while travelling that Sim Chang Wan[21] had died, he left for Pyongyang immediately in the dead of night, braving a downpour and crossing a high railway bridge.

Kim Jong Il's lofty feeling of love for his comrades is rooted in Kim Il Sung's revolutionary comradeship. It is an integral whole of genuine love and loyalty based on trust in and revolutionary obligation to comrades. Running through this feeling is the world of trust that "I am you and you are me," and the view that "there is an old saying that 800 *ryang* of gold will buy a house and 1,000 *ryang* a neighbour, but even 1,000 *ryang* cannot buy a revolutionary comrade."

Kim Jong Il is a great man and a great comrade of the veteran revolutionaries, old officials and officials of the new generation, as he ushered in a world of dutifulness with his love for and trust in these officials.

FOR THE ETERNAL LIFE OF THE MARTYRS

Kim Jong Il ensured an eternal life for the revolutionary martyrs who had been faithful to the Party and the revolution from the days of the anti-Japanese revolution till their deaths, and for the patriotic martyrs who had dedicated their lives to their country and people.

Kim Il Sung, the incarnation of revolutionary obligation and affection, saw to it that bronze statues of Kim Chaek[22], An Kil[23], Kang Kon[24], Ryu Kyong Su[25], Jo Jong Chol[26], Kim Kyong Sok[27], Choe Chun Guk[28] and other anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs were set up in their native places or in meaningful places to greet the 20th anniversary of the founding of the DPRK, and a revolutionary martyrs cemetery was built on Mt. Taesong on the occasion of the 30th anniversary of the founding of the WPK.

One winter night Kim Il Sung phoned Kim Jong Il, and said, with deep emotion: "Seeing the snow falling in large flakes, I'm reminded of the guerrilla days. When my men sent out on a mission did not come back in time, I would wait for them outside the secret camp, with no shelter from the heavy snow."

Kim Jong Il could understand his feeling.

Kim Jong Il called officials and told that they should reconstruct the

martyrs cemetery, expanding it, so that the images of the martyrs, whom Kim Il Sung always remembered, could be handed down to posterity. In October 1982, he inspected the draft plan for the reconstruction of the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery, and told the officials that undertaking the reconstruction project in his generation without fail would mean a correct succession of the revolutionary traditions, instructing them to conduct the project in a big way as Kim Il Sung intended.

One day, when the constructors were working full steam ahead to finish the project by October 10, 1985, ie, the 40th anniversary of the founding of the WPK, Kim Jong Il inspected the reconstruction site.

During the inspection, he said, "It is important to lay out the background of the uppermost part of the cemetery. I think it'll be advisable to set up a stone imitation of a fluttering red flag. If visitors get a feeling that the revolutionary martyrs are not in a pine forest but are wrapped in a red flag, then their praying for the souls of the martyrs will become more meaningful and the cemetery will become more solemn."

He then inspected the busts of the martyrs to give his instructions, and found that they were made of artificial marble. After deep thought, he said, "If the busts of the revolutionary martyrs are made of artificial marble, many people will be fooled into thinking that they are made of natural marble. But I would have a guilty conscience as regards the martyrs, who were unfailingly faithful to Comrade Kim Il Sung, and sacrificed their lives for the sake of their country and people."

He decided that the busts must be made of bronze. On July 5, 1985, he again visited the reconstruction site. He found that the Hero's Medal was portrayed on the busts of some martyrs.

He said, "I can't see such a medal on the bust of O Jung Hup. His feats surpassed those of any other hero. If a system of awarding the title of hero had been instituted in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, the martyrs would have all won the title. It would be better to carve in bold relief a large replica of the Hero of the DPRK medal than a five-pointed star on the stand where wreaths will be laid."

Kim Jong Il left the inscription "Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery" which he had written personally for the cemetery.

On October 4, 1985, he inspected every structure of the cemetery, from its gate to the red flag. He then said that the cemetery was a graveyard but

looked like a whole artistic piece, stressing that it was a symbol of high appreciation for the feats of the martyrs.

Kim Il Sung, looking round the reconstructed cemetery, expressed his great satisfaction, saying that such a cemetery cold be found only in Korea.

Kim Jong Il showed special attention for the building of a patriotic martyrs cemetery.

In April 1984, when the reconstruction of the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery was at its height, Kim Jong Il called an official and said, "While listing one by one the names of the martyrs of the anti-Japanese revolution to be buried at the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery, Comrade Kim Il Sung said that there are many other unforgettable revolutionaries and patriots who dedicated their lives to the country and nation, suggesting that we build another martyrs cemetery to bury their remains there. We should first fix the site of the cemetery in a suitable place."

A few days later, Kim Jong Il received a report from the officials. They said that they had been to various places on the outskirts of Pyongyang but failed to find a proper site. He personally chose a site at Sinmi-ri, Hyongjesan District, in the suburbs of Pyongyang.

Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il named, one by one, the revolutionaries and patriotic martyrs to be buried in the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery, recalling the feats and exploits they had performed in the sacred revolutionary struggle for the freedom of the people, independence and sovereignty of the country and victory of socialism for more than half a century since the start of the Juche revolution. In this way, the remains of anti-Japanese martyrs like Ryang Se Bong[29], officials who had performed exploits for the revolution and construction after the country's liberation like Jong Jun Thaek[30] and Kang Yong Chang[31], sportsmen like Pak Yong Sun[32], revolutionary martyrs who had fought for the country's reunification like Kim Jong Thae[33], and other patriotic martyrs were to be buried in the cemetery. Among those to be buried there were also one-time politicians of the puppet government in south Korea. This was thanks to Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il, who treasured them for having broken with their undesirable past and worked for the sacred cause of national reunification till the last moments of their lives.

In March 1986, when the construction of the cemetery was at its final stage, Kim Jong Il inspected the construction site. He went over the designs

for the gate to the cemetery, drawn in various forms and under various names, and fixed the name as "Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery."

When its construction was about to be completed, he again went over the list of those to be buried in the cemetery and gave detailed instructions concerning this.

Thanks to his deep care, the cemetery was built in a grandiose way.

Choe Tok Sin[34], former foreign minister and commander of a corps in south Korea, was visiting his homeland when the inauguration ceremony of the cemetery was held. In front of the tombstones of his father Choe Tong O[35] and his father-in-law Ryu Tong Yol[36], he said, in tears: "President Kim Il Sung and leader Kim Jong Il guaranteed eternal political integrity to my father and father-in-law, who performed nothing special for the country and nation. The Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery is the acme of the affection for the patriotic martyrs and sense of obligation towards them of President Kim Il Sung and leader Kim Jong Il."

Bronze statues of revolutionary and patriotic martyrs and heroes have been set up in their native places and alma maters, several villages, schools, factories, cooperative farms and units of the KPA have been named after them, and their exploits are given wide publicity.

7. **LOFTY FEELING OF AFFECTION FOR FELLOW COUNTRYMEN**

UNDER THE BANNER OF THE POLICY OF FOUNDING A FEDERAL REPUBLIC

Putting an end to the tragedy of national division and achieving the country's reunification became a more urgent task as time passed. The national division imposed by outside forces in the 1940s continued into the 1980s, and distrust and antagonism between the north and the south grew intense.

At the Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea, Kim Il Sung analysed and estimated the situation at home and abroad concerning the reunification of the country, and clarified the way for achieving the cause of the country's reunification peacefully in the interests of the whole nation

even in the situation that there existed different ideologies and systems in the north and the south.

Regarding reunification as the supreme task of the nation and a lofty mission of his own, Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle for putting into effect the policy of founding the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo (DFRK) advanced by Kim Il Sung.

The joint meeting of political parties and social organizations in the DPRK convened at the proposal of Kim Jong Il in November 1980 confirmed the policy of founding the DFRK as the only just reunification policy, and adopted with the unanimous approval of all the participants a letter to be sent to democratic figures and personages of political parties and social organizations in south Korea and abroad. The letter proposed forming a preparatory committee for founding the DFRK involving representatives from all walks of life in the north, the south and abroad in order to realize the policy of founding the DFRK as soon as possible. To this end, it suggested holding a preliminary meeting at the earliest possible date. This policy gathered great support at home and abroad.

Kim Jong Il put forward a new policy of making a proposal for calling a joint conference of 100 politicians from the north, the south and abroad.

In February 1982 the statement of the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of the Fatherland proposing the calling of the joint conference was made public through the mass media.

This statement was an announcement of patriotic spirit for reunification, which aroused all Koreans in the north, the south and abroad to the implementation of the policy of founding the DFRK.

However, due to the splittist manoeuvres of the south Korean authorities, dialogue and contact between the north and the south were not brought to realization, and many difficulties and hardships still stood in the way of the country's reunification.

Kim Jong Il devoted all his energies to keeping the Korean people's zeal for reunification gathering momentum, creating an atmosphere of reconciliation and solidarity, lightening their misfortunes and sufferings caused by the division of the country and endeavouring to reconnect the severed national links.

From late August to early September 1984 unusually heavy rains poured down, and floods swept the whole area of south Korea. According to the

south Korean newspapers, the floods killed 350 people, disrupted the lives of 207,000 people, destroyed 36,700 houses and washed away or buried a wide area of farmland and roads.

Kim Jong Il, who was then giving on-the-spot guidance to various areas, worried very much about the misfortune that had befallen the south Korean compatriots, and thought about how to help them.

One rainy evening, after looking out of the window for a long time, he asked an official what measures could be taken as the flood damage in south Korea had been reported to be tremendous.

That evening, officials decided to report through the mass media the flood damage in south Korea, but their opinions were in accord in that it was not necessary even to think of sending relief goods to the flood victims. They considered that in the light of the attitudes of the successive south Korean authorities that had never accepted the north's compatriotic proposals of that type, a proposal for sending relief goods would be refused once again.

The following morning, Kim Jong Il, after hearing their opinions, said;

"We must send the flood victims in south Korea relief goods permeated with our warm feelings of fraternity."

The Central Committee of the Red Cross Society of the DPRK immediately discussed the issue of sending relief goods to the south Korean flood victims, and adopted appropriate decisions.

According to the decisions, measures were taken for sending 50,000 *sok* (One *sok* equals about 144 kg.) of rice, 500,000 metres of cloth, 100,000 tons of cement, and medicines. This amount of rice was enough to supply 250 kg to each household of the victims, and the amount of cloth was sufficient to provide every victim with a suit of clothes. With 100,000 tons of cement 30,000 flats could be built, and the medicines were enough to prevent and cure various kinds of diseases which might break out in the flooded areas.

On hearing the news, the south Korean people welcomed it, saying that, as the proverb goes, "Blood is thicker than water," and that only the brothers of the same blood in the north could save the flood victims in the south. Even the Western mass media commented that it was a "product of 100 per cent compatriotic feeling."

Kim Jong Il pushed forward the work of preparing the relief goods.

He formed a headquarters for this work, involving the senior officials of the Administration Council, and assigned it the task of organizing the production of the relief goods and making preparations for their transportation as quickly as possible. Moreover, on a rainy day he visited a production site for relief goods, and gave detailed guidance to it. And he issued a special order on mobilizing waggons and lorries needed in large numbers.

At last, on September 28, 1984, hundreds of lorries loaded with relief goods crossed the Military Demarcation Line for Phaju, and large ships headed for the ports in Inchon and Pukphyong. This was a scene witnessed for the first time in 40 years of the country's division.

The opening of the barrier of division occasioned resumption of contacts and dialogue in many fields between the north and the south; north-south economic talks were opened, and north-south Red Cross talks, which had been suspended 12 years ago, were held again in May 1985.

In order to broaden the scope of the inter-Korean dialogues and negotiations, Kim Jong Il saw to it that proposals for holding a north-south joint conference of parliamentarians, conferences of sports figures and students, and various other proposals for dialogues were made. He also took meticulous care for the realization of mutual visits of art troupes, sports teams and home-visiting groups between the north and the south that would create an atmosphere of reconciliation and unity.

As for the items to be discussed at the north-south Red Cross talks, he instructed that it should be proposed that on the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the country's liberation the separated families in the north and south should make free visits, not confining themselves to meeting at Panmunjom, and performances of art troupes should be exchanged. He added that if the families scattered on both sides visited each other and art troupes were exchanged, an atmosphere of reconciliation and unity would be created.

In this way, mutual visits of art troupes and home-visiting groups between the north and the south were brought to realization. In September 1985, members of art troupes and home-visiting groups led by the Red Cross societies of both sides visited Pyongyang and Seoul respectively. This was a great event in the history of the nation.

The art troupe from the north started its performance with *Kumgang*

Fairies, in which eight legendary fairies fly down from the sky flapping their wings and unfold a fascinating world of dance, with the background of the 12,000 peaks of Mt. Kumgang glowing under a rainbow. The troupe put on the stage programmes reflecting the customs and sentiments peculiar to the Korean nation, and other colourful ones portraying the happy and optimistic lives of the north Korean people, winning great admiration from the audiences.

Members of the home-visiting groups had impressive reunions with their families and relatives after 40 years of separation.

The exchanges of the art troupes and home-visiting groups through the Red Cross societies made the whole nation feel keenly that Korea is one and the Korean nation must be reunified, further inspiring south Korean people with ardour for reunification.

In the meantime, Kim Jong Il put great efforts into forming a great national united front.

He ensured that various reasonable proposals for forming a pan-national united front were made to actively arouse the patriotic, democratic forces in the south and abroad to the cause of national reunification. As a result, dialogues and meetings between the north and overseas compatriots were held in Vienna, Helsinki and Tokyo. In December 1984, the National Alliance for the Country's Reunification was formed.

Besides, in the latter half of the 1980s letters proposing the holding of a north-south joint conference for forming a national united front were sent to political parties, social organizations and prominent personages in south Korea. As soon as the letters were sent, broad sections of the south Korean people voiced their opinions that the masses must be the main force in the solution of the reunification problem. This showed that the motive force which could achieve the country's reunification by the efforts of the Korean nation itself had been further strengthened.

DEVELOPING THE MOVEMENT OF KOREANS IN JAPAN ONTO A HIGHER STAGE

Entering the latter half of the 1980s, the movement of Koreans in Japan greeted a new turning point in its development.

During the 40 years following the country's liberation, changes of

generation and class composition took place among the Korean nationals in Japan. The first generation, which had been dragged to the alien land of Japan burdened with the sorrow of a ruined nation in the past and had experienced a bitter life of colonial slavery, had decreased in number; the second and third generations, which had been born and grown up there, accounted for an overwhelming proportion of Korean nationals, and emerged as the main elements in the movement of Koreans in Japan. Moreover, the number of workers and farmers among them had shrunk, whereas that of business people and industrialists had increased until it constituted the vast majority, becoming the majority of the members of Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan).

The environment for Chongryon's work had also changed considerably. As the tie-up between the Japanese reactionaries and the south Korean anti-reunification forces deepened, reactionary offensives and manoeuvres to weaken the national character of the Korean nationals in Japan and divert them from the way of patriotism became more intense.

On the basis of deep insight into the changed environment of Chongryon and the demands of the development of the movement of Koreans in Japan, Kim Jong Il made a speech, titled *On Further Improving and Strengthening the Work of Chongryon to Meet the Demand of the Developing Situation,* in September 1986, and set forth important tasks to be carried out by Chongryon.

He said that one important thing in the work of Chongryon was to build up its ranks on the basis of the changed situation. He said that another important thing was to further improve ideological work to meet the demand of the developing situation, and fight energetically to defend the democratic national rights of Koreans by conducting its patriotic work efficiently.

In order for Chongryon to carry out its tasks successfully, Kim Jong Il said, all its units must establish a new attitude by which officials work with a high sense of responsibility.

He took care of the work and lives of Chongryon officials, and led them meticulously. He respected, valued and paid a high tribute to the veteran cadres who had been devoting all their lives to the work of Chongryon, and looked after their lives and health.

His dutiful affection for them went so far as to seeing to it that cadres of

Chongryon visited their homeland with their wives as members of delegations. He showed deep concern about their reception, board and lodging, schedules and sightseeing during their stay, and presented each pair with *insam,* embroideries and other gifts.

Kim Jong Il paid attention to arousing a high sense of patriotism among Korean merchants and entrepreneurs.

Saying that merchants and entrepreneurs who had devoted their all to the prosperity of their homeland were true patriots, Kim Jong Il ensured that street, hospital, bridge and factories were named after them, and had monuments to their loyalty erected. Thus, An Sang Thaek Street, Kim Man Yu Hospital and Jong Im Bridge came into being in Pyongyang.

Kim Jong Il met Korean youth, students, scientists, women and artists from Japan, gave them valuable instructions, and bestowed upon them great trust and affection.

On the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the founding of Chongryon, he sent a letter to Chongryon and Korean nationals in Japan, titled *On Developing the Movement of Koreans in Japan to a New and Higher Stage.* In the letter, he pointed out with satisfaction the proud 40-year history of Chongryon, which had traversed a road of victory, braving manifold difficulties and trials, and highlighted the important tasks for further strengthening Chongryon and developing the movement of Koreans in Japan to a new and higher stage.

Saying that Chongryon officials and other compatriots in Japan should hold Kim Il Sung in high esteem forever, and carry out all types of work of Chongryon as Kim Il Sung intended and hoped, he underlined the need for strengthening Chongryon organizationally and ideologically and improving its role, consolidating its mass foundation through efficient work with the compatriots from all strata, intensifying ideological education to firmly establish the ideological system of Juche among officials and other compatriots and equip them with the true spirit of love for the country and nation, and improving the work method and style of the Chongryon officials.

As he built up Chongryon into an invincible, single-hearted organization and indicated the way the movement of Koreans in Japan should follow, all Chongryon officials and Korean compatriots in Japan could accelerate the advance for inheriting and consummating the patriotic cause of Juche from generation to generation.

8. THE PYONGYANG FESTIVAL

As a grand international political festival, the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students held in Pyongyang in July 1989, under Kim Jong Il's wise guidance, crowned the history of the movement of the world festival of youth and students.

The world festival of youth and students, which had been held more than 10 times for nearly 40 years since its opening in Prague in July 1947 as an event for solidarity between the progressive youth and students the world over, had made a contribution to opposing war and imperialism, ensuring world peace and security, and cementing friendship and unity among the youth and students of various countries.

Kim Jong Il determined to ensure the hosting of the festival by Korea, an outpost of the world anti-imperialist struggle, in line with the correct ideals of the festival, so as to make the festival a grand political one which would mark a turning point in preserving its progressive character, and intensifying solidarity and joint struggle against imperialism.

It was not at all easy to hold the festival in Asia, a continent in which a festival of this kind had never been held until then, and for all that, in Korea, whose territory had been divided and where imperialist schemes for aggression and new war were perpetrated without interruption.

Taking all this into account, Kim Jong Il made a meticulous effort for the preparations to be made in a far-sighted way for hosting the festival in Pyongyang.

Attaching great importance to the opening and closing ceremonies in particular, he paid close attention to ensuring that they combined properly with the Korean setting, and were held in a unique way while maintaining their international character.

He taught officials that the opening and closing ceremonies should be organized in a festive atmosphere acceptable to people from the five continents and overflow with the feelings of congratulations and welcome for all the participants.

Pointing out that the contents should contain feelings of celebration, welcome, friendship and solidarity, as seen in the prelude of the opening

ceremony *The Song of the Festival* and the finale of the closing ceremony *Let Us Meet Again, Dear Friends, on the Way to Peace,* Kim Jong Il said that information about Korea could be given through the mass gymnastics display and other functions to be held on the Day of Korea, instead of giving it through the opening and closing ceremonies. He instructed that the festival should be declared open with signallers dressed in the costume of Koguryo generals, beating drums and blowing horns, not like in other countries where they blew bugles or trumpets.

Thanks to his great efforts for making material preparations, more than 260 big structures, including the May Day Stadium with a capacity of 150,000 seats, Kwangbok Street with 5,000 flats that could accommodate some festival guests, and Chongchun Street equipped with comprehensive sports facilities, were built in a short time.

In October 1988, on the occasion of the festival, Kim Jong Il published a work, titled *The Present Times and the Tasks Facing Young People.*

In this work, he stressed that young people should take the lead in carrying out the cause of anti-imperialist independence, cherishing in their hearts the mission and duty they had assumed for the times.

With the festival near at hand, he guided on the spot the trial performance of the opening and closing ceremonies.

The 13th World Festival of Youth and Students was held with great success from the 1st to the 8th of July, 1989. Attending the festival were more than 20,000 foreigners, including youth and student delegates from 180 countries worldwide and delegates from 64 international and regional organizations. The festival was also attended by heads of political parties and governments from various countries and many high-ranking honoured guests and personages, as well as overseas Korean compatriots. The fact that the international festival, participated in by delegates from so many countries and high-ranking honoured guests was held in Pyongyang was an event of great significance.

Also participating in the festival was a delegate from Jondaehyop (the National Council of Student Representatives), an organization of one million students in south Korea.

Highly appreciating the patriotic action of the delegate, who came to the festival with a burning will for reunification, Kim Jong Il ensured that during her stay she conducted her activities to her heart's content among the

young people and students of the DPRK and from the other parts of the world.

What was particularly conspicuous in the Pyongyang Festival, which opened amid the world attention, were the opening and closing ceremonies held in the May Day Stadium.

At the opening ceremony, Kim Il Sung made a congratulatory speech, titled *Young People and Students, Be the Vanguard of Our Times,* in which he emphasized the ideals of the festival.

The scenes of the opening and closing ceremonies–the blazing flame on the beacon tower of the festival, the costumes of Koguryo generals and horns showing the spirit and dignity of the Korean nation, the fascinating brass band and drum band, eight fairies of Mt. Kumgang descending along a rainbow, a farewell chorus and dance *Let Us Meet Again, Dear Friends, on the Way to Peace*–were an acme of human ingenuity.

Not only the opening and closing ceremonies but also the political, cultural, art and sports events, national clubs and the Day of Korea–held in hundreds of places–reached the highest stage for their political and ideological contents, unique forms, national colour and a high level of organization and artistic value.

5

(JANUARY 1990–JUNE 1994)

1. SINGLE-HEARTED UNITY

THE WPK'S PHILOSOPHY OF REVOLUTION

For the Korean people, the 1990s were a historic period, as this decade was fraught with remarkable events affecting their political, ideological and spiritual lives.

Socialism in the former Soviet Union and other Eastern European countries came to suffer a setback–an abnormal phenomenon–due to the moves of the revisionists ganging up with the imperialists and reactionaries who were pursuing their anti-socialist strategy aimed at turning back the progressive movement of history. Especially, the US imperialists, who emerged as the one and only superpower following the destruction of the bipolar East-West structure as a result of the collapse of the Soviet Union, were making every effort to isolate and stifle the DPRK, the citadel of socialism, resorting to ever more risky moves for an aggressive war.

Worse still, as the situation was in its grave phase, the world's veteran revolutionary Kim Il Sung, acclaimed by the Korean people as the sun of the nation for the first time in their five-thousand-year-long history, suddenly passed away. His demise was an irreparable loss to the Korean revolution.

The situation in and around the country demanded that the Korean people develop in depth the single-hearted unity between the Party and the ranks of revolution to a new high to staunchly defend and brighten their Korean-style man-centred socialism.

In January 1990, Kim Jong Il met a senior official of the Party Central Committee and expressed his determination to, in the decade of the meaningful 1990s, advance in the teeth of the adverse wind of history and

create a new history of the decade with the firm conviction of Juche-oriented socialism. He said that revolution is accompanied by twists and turns, adding that socialism was undergoing hardships, but only temporarily, and its everlasting victory was assured, that socialism would surely emerge victorious as it is an embodiment of the aspiration and will of the people, and that only those with full conviction of sure victory, with unyielding disposition and with steadfast principles could venture on the march of the 1990s.

Keenly sizing up the ever-aggravating situation caused by the anti-DPRK, anti-socialist isolate-and-stifle manoeuvres of the US-led imperialist allied forces and their stooges, Kim Jong Il vigorously worked to smash all sorts of enemy challenges, and defend and brighten the Korean-style people-centred socialism by dint of the invincible cohesion of the entire Party and the whole society, and the single-hearted unity of the leader, the Party and the masses.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on January 1, 1992, titled *Let Us Add Lustre to the Socialism of Our Own Style by Intensifying Party Work,* he mentioned that the previous year had been a year of victory won by the WPK and the Korean people under the unfurled red banner of socialism in the struggle against the pressure brought to bear by the imperialists and reactionaries from all directions.

He said:

" 'Let us add lustre to the socialism of our own style by dint of single-hearted unity!'–this is the militant slogan our Party puts forward at present."

He continued that single-hearted unity is the lifeblood of the Korean revolution and the banner which the Korean people should hold aloft constantly; in other words, it is precisely the most powerful weapon with which to smash all sorts of challenges of the enemy and safeguard and brighten the people-centred socialism of the Korean style in the course of consummating the revolutionary cause of Juche through generations.

Consolidating and developing the traditional single-hearted unity provided by Kim Il Sung–this was what Kim Jong Il had harboured from his early days as his far-reaching aim and unshakable determination.

Kim Il Sung created the tradition of single-hearted unity at the dawn of the Korean revolution and consolidated it as an unbreakable cornerstone of the revolution in the whole course of the arduous anti-Japanese

revolutionary struggle. By inheriting this tradition in its entirety, Kim Jong Il made every effort to transform the entire Party and the whole society into a socio-political organism, a great mass of single-hearted unity.

On the basis of his full understanding in his early days of the truth that revolution is unity and unity means victory, he put forward original ideas and theories on the centre and ideological basis of unity and cohesion during his university days. When working on the Party Central Committee giving leadership to Party work, he established the monolithic ideological system throughout the Party and society by resolutely smashing the moves of the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists, and firmly united all the masses of the people behind the Party with his broadmindedness and magnanimity, and by the exercise of benevolent and all-embracing politics.

Holding aloft the sacred banner of the single-hearted unity, Kim Jong Il put forward the slogan "Let us advance under the unfurled banner of single-hearted unity!" He explained that the Korean revolution began with unity and was winning one victory after another with the strength of unity as its weapon.

He said:

"When I set out in the struggle to carry forward and consummate the glorious revolutionary cause of Juche, I took up single-hearted unity as the weapon of revolution. Single-hearted unity is my philosophy of revolution.

"Today the entire Party and all the people are firmly united ideologically and purposefully, morally and dutifully with the respected leader Comrade Kim Il Sung as the centre and on the basis of the great Juche idea. Our Party is a party of single-hearted unity and our country is a country of single-hearted unity.

"Ours is a single-hearted unity of the Party, the leader and the people. Our single-hearted unity consists in the fact that the Party and the leader place their trust in the people, and the latter display their utmost loyalty to the former. Trust and love shown by the Party and the leader for the people and the people's loyalty to the Party and the leader–this crystallization is precisely our single-hearted unity."

From the late 1980s to the early 1990s, when the world political situation was changing rapidly, Kim Jong Il considered the strengthening of the single-hearted unity of the whole society to be a fundamental question bearing upon the destiny of the revolutionary cause of Juche and an

important source for giving full play to the superiority of Korean-style socialism, and worked hard to this end.

In his answers to questions raised by the General Director of *Granma,* the organ of the Central Committee of the Communist Party of Cuba, on October 26, 1989, and talk to senior officials of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea in early October 1990 and other speeches, he analyzed the serious lessons of the international communist movement, and gave very important instructions on carrying forward and developing the tradition of unity and cohesion of the Party through generations. He explained that in Party activity unity in action based on the monolithic ideology is realized through unified leadership, and that the process of realizing the unified leadership of the Party Centre in Party work and activity is, in essence, the process of implementing Party policies, emphasizing the need to carry out Party policies in the spirit of absolute and unconditional implementation. He also stressed that establishing a steely centralized discipline whereby the entire Party moves as one is a basic guarantee for realizing the Party's unified leadership.

In order to consolidate the single-minded unity of the whole society, Kim Jong Il strove to bring the greatness of Kim Il Sung home to the Party members and other working people, and inspire them to further efforts to defend and brighten his imperishable exploits so as to help them make their loyalty to him their faith, conscience, moral obligation and everyday concern. Meanwhile, he saw to it that the single-hearted unity of the leader, the Party and the masses was further cemented through efficient work with the masses continuously, in accordance with the Korean people's noble ideological and mental inclination to trust and follow only the Party in any adversity and by uniting them solidly behind the Party.

Out of his love for and trust in the masses of the people, Kim Jong Il ensured that the Party showed more concern and care for the people, while the officials served them devotedly. As a result, the people came to trust and follow the Party absolutely, and the Party formed solid ties of kinship with the masses of the people. Consequently, the people displayed their utmost loyalty in carrying out the Party's lines and policies on the principle of absolute and unconditional implementation, taking the slogan "When the Party is determined, we can do anything!" as a requirement for their life.

In order to keep the red flag of socialism flying higher under the slogan of single-hearted unity, Kim Jong Il initiated conferences of arms and services of the People's Army, and meetings of soldiers of various ranks, and encouraged the People's Army soldiers to enhance their unshakable pledge and determination, as well as the revolutionary spirit of soldiers of becoming human bullets and bombs unhesitatingly in defending the Party and the leader. He also suggested the National Meeting of Martyrs' Families, the Eighth Congress of the League of the Socialist Working Youth of Korea and the National Meeting of Models of Communist Virtue, which, in fact, highlighted the might and invincibility of the Korean-style people-centred socialism rallied firmly behind the Party and the leader. Especially, at the Korean Intellectuals Meeting held in December 1992 Kim Jong Il ensured that it was demonstrated to the whole world that the Korean intellectuals living and making revolution under the care of their great leader and great Party were very proud of themselves as they were blessed with the leader, that the Korean intellectuals have their socialist homeland of Juche, though science extends beyond border-lines, and that they would staunchly fight to defend the red flag of revolution come what may.

Guided by his revolutionary philosophy of single-hearted unity, Kim Jong Il turned the whole society into a great harmonious organism woven on the collectivist principle of "One for all and all for one."

Each time he received report about noble communist deeds performed by the people, laying one's life just to defend the leader or for the sake of one's comrades, being the first to volunteer to work at a difficult and challenging post and devoting one's all to one's organization and community Kim Jong Il was so delighted that he sent them his thanks, autographed letters and valuable gifts, highly appreciating them as noble-minded and their deeds as commendable. He also ensured that they were given wide publicity by newspapers, radio, TV and film, and that vigorous campaigns to emulate them were launched by Party and working people's organizations. Consequently, noble communist deeds that highlighted the superiority and invincibility of socialism spread far and wide throughout the country, and the single-hearted unity that welds the leader, the Party and the masses into a single organism was upgraded to the loftiest level.

LETTERS OF TRUST AND AFFECTION

In their letters to Kim Jong Il, the Korean people pledged to trust and follow only the WPK, sharing the same destiny with it no matter what fierce wind might blow, and heartily wished him good health for the consummation of the Juche revolutionary cause, asserting that his good health is the destiny of the nation, lifeline of the Party and happiness of the people.

In his talk to senior officials of the Party Central Committee, Kim Jong Il said:

"Our people have sent me many letters in which they have expressed their will and determination to trust and follow the Party in consummating the revolutionary cause of Juche in any adversity, stating that our socialism is imperishable in spite of the grim situation in which the country is at a crossroads–socialism or capitalism–owing to the moves of the imperialists and reactionaries, just because it is guided by the Party... . After the war, when our revolution was undergoing trials, an elderly woman in Thaesong-ri inspired the leader with confidence and strength; now in the 90s many other people like her are pumping confidence and strength into me."

One day, just before the 45th anniversary of the founding of the WPK, the members of the Second Party Cell of the Fifth Bureau of the Korean Central News Agency wrote to Kim Jong Il who, with full confidence, was leading the Party and the people to victory in the socialist cause in the rapidly-changing, rigorous situation when socialism had suffered setbacks in several countries, that they were fully determined to constantly support the Party loyally.

The letter read in part:

"As long as we are guided by a great ideology and under wise leadership, only victory and glory will always be in store for us.

"…

"We will defend the Party Central Committee at the risk of our lives, and become standard-bearers holding the banner of the Juche idea in the van of the sector of our Party's press and mass media. The red flag we hold aloft will bear the sentence 'Let cowards flinch and traitors sneer. We'll keep the Red Flag flying here!' "

Kim Jong Il read their letter and sent a reply to them. The letter read:

To the comrades of the Second Party Cell.

I have received your letter. I express my thanks for your hard work. I assure you that I will redouble my efforts and remain boundlessly faithful to the Party and the revolutionary cause, living up to your expectation.

With comradely greetings,

Kim Jong Il

November 1, 1990.

The cell members had never thought of receiving a reply from such a busy leader.

When his letter of reply was reported through newspapers and radio, the Korean people were overwhelmed with deep emotions and excitement.

Shortly afterwards, Kim Jong Il received a letter from poets of the Korean Literature Production Company, which reflected their determination to bring about a greater upsurge in their creative work, and sent them his autographed reply which read: "I wish you to be eternal companions, faithful assistants and good advisers to our Party in its building and activity."

His reply letters pumped unshakable faith and enthusiasm all the more into the Korean people, who were willing to trust and follow Kim Jong Il, regarding him as their heaven, and keep the red flag of revolution flying high in any storm under the leadership of the Party.

Party members and other working people sent letters one after another to Kim Jong Il, who was leading the Korean revolution to victory, expressing their determination to support him loyally and their wishes for his good health. Some of the letters were sent by anti-Japanese veterans, senior Party and government officials, miners of Komdok Mine and Tokchon Coal Mine, farmers of Chongsan-ri, officers and men of the KPA, intellectuals, students, returnees from abroad and Japanese women who had become Korean citizens.

Reading all the letters from the people of all walks of life, Kim Jong Il gained more confidence that the WPK could always emerge victorious and constantly advance till its ultimate victory under the unfurled banner of revolution so long as it was supported by such people, Party members and companions. He sent them replies of encouragement.

One of his replies sent to eight soldiers–seven brothers and their sis-

ter–of the KPA in early September 1993, read:

"To the revolutionary soldiers who are loyal to the homeland and the people, the Party and the leader,

"I think it a source of great pride for our people and army to have excellent soldiers like you who devote their all to the revolutionary cause."

Upon the news of Kim Jong Il's acclamation as the Supreme Commander of the KPA, a woman resident of Tongdaewon District, Pyongyang City, two of whose sons were already in the army, exhorted her six other children, who had different jobs, to enlist in the army and support Kim Jong Il loyally, arms in hand.

Upon his receipt of a report about this woman, Kim Jong Il said, "When her six other children enlist in the army, all of her eight children will be soldiers. What a laudable deed!"

Her eight children in uniform wrote to their Supreme Commander Kim Jong Il, giving him their word that they would defend him more loyally than anyone else, with arms in their hands.

Fathoming from their letter the unanimous feeling of the entire Korean people and army to brave any hardships and trials in response to the Party's call, entrusting their fate to the Party, Kim Jong Il made this reply to their letter.

The letters and replies of trust and affection contributed to consolidating and developing the Korean-style people-centred socialism which formed a great harmonious organism to be more durable.

2. DEFENDING KOREAN-STYLE SOCIALISM

THE PARTY'S LEADERSHIP IS THE LIFELINE OF THE SOCIALIST CAUSE

Strengthening the Party and enhancing its leadership role is a fundamental question bearing upon the destiny of socialism. This is a key to the acceleration of revolution and construction for the ultimate victory of socialism.

As socialism collapsed in the former Soviet Union and other Eastern European countries, tightening the Party's leadership posed itself as a

serious matter related to the destiny of the WPK and the Korean people.

In the late 1980s and early 1990s, the revisionists and social reformists denied the party's leadership and adopted the "multi-party system" in politics, thus bringing the working-class parties themselves to their ruin.

A serious lesson drawn from the revival of capitalism in several socialist countries was that when the strength of the party is weakened and its leadership denied, it is impossible to consolidate and develop the socialist system and to avoid the loss of the revolutionary gains.

Kim Jong Il gave profound explanations on matters of principle with regard to strengthening the Party and enhancing its leadership role in conformity with the actual requirements, and geared his work to this end.

In his work titled *The Workers' Party of Korea Organizes and Guides All the Victories of Our People,* published in October 1990, on the occasion of the 45th anniversary of the founding of the WPK, and other works, he clearly pointed out the tasks and ways for strengthening the Party and enhancing its leadership role.

Explaining that the Party's leadership is the decisive guarantee for achieving the victory of socialism, he said:

"The Party's leadership is the lifeline of the socialist cause.

"In our country the socialist cause has advanced and gained victories under the leadership of our Party, and it can be brilliantly accomplished only under its leadership."

The party's leadership is a decisive guarantee for building up the driving force of the socialist cause and enhancing its role. The lifeblood of the masses of the people as the driving force of the socialist cause is inconceivable apart from the revolutionary leadership of the working-class party, and the socialist cause can be victoriously advanced according to the correct strategies and tactics of struggle only when it is guided by the party.

The history of the international communist movement has proved that if the party's leadership of the whole of society is weakened or emasculated, socialism loses its lifeblood and collapses.

Kim Jong Il directed his primary effort at strengthening the Party and enhancing its leadership role. Above all else, he paid close attention constantly to inheriting the Party's guiding ideology in a pure way, to invariably maintaining the revolutionary character of the Party, and to firmly uniting the entire Party in ideology and purpose on the basis of

monolithic ideology, the revolutionary ideology of the leader. He also strove to make the Party discharge its duty as the mother party, taking the work with people as its basic concern, and turn all its work into that done in a Party way, in a political way.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the revolutionary climate of the Party was created among the officials and other Party members to cope with the prevailing tense circumstances.

Saying that a working-class party has a party climate of its own in its building and activity in conformity to its character and mission, Kim Jong Il taught that the climate of the WPK, a Juche-type party, is the tone of party life and style of work by which the Party members work wholeheartedly for the leader, the Party and the people, regarding loyalty to the leader as their life and soul.

Kim Jong Il paid special attention to strengthening the ties of kinship between the Party and the masses, and thoroughly carrying out the revolutionary mass line.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council on January 1, 1990, Kim Jong Il said:

"Only officials who faithfully serve the people and enjoy support and love from the people can be called genuine Party officials of the Juche type.

"As there is a slogan 'We serve the homeland!' in the army, the slogan 'We serve the people!' must be the slogan of our Party officials."

Putting forward the slogan "We serve the people!" as the starting point, as the objective of work with the masses, Kim Jong Il geared the Party work and activity to thoroughly championing the people's interests and faithfully serving the masses of the people.

He advanced the slogan "Let the whole Party go among the masses!" and made the officials share the sweet and the bitter with the masses, thus ensuring closer ties of kinship between the Party and the masses.

Establishing a proper work method and style among the officials is most important in enabling the Party to discharge its duties as it should, taking responsibility for the destiny of the people.

Foreseeing in the early days of his activity the danger of possible abuse of power, bureaucracy and corruption emerging out of the activities of the ruling party, Kim Jong Il raised it as an essential task for the Party to wipe out abuses of Party authority and bureaucracy among the cadres, and took a

series of innovative measures for the purpose.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee in October 1990, he emphasized the need to improve the method and style of Party work.

He said:

"As I have always said, for the Party officials to devotedly serve the masses, mingling with them, is as good as their taking a tonic, whereas their abuse of authority and exercise of bureaucracy is much the same as deliberately taking poison."

He helped the Party officials to establish a habit of going among the people as their servants, not as bureaucrats, and working devotedly for them, through the struggle to wipe out the abuse of Party authority, bureaucracy and corruption.

Besides, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to improving the officials' outlook on Party organization and intensifying their life in their respective Party organizations, himself setting a personal example as far as the revolutionary outlook on Party organization was concerned.

Kim Jong Il once made a phone call to a senior official of a central body. But the official had gone out to pay his Party membership dues. Although someone else could be sent for him to answer the call in a minute, Kim Jong Il waited until the latter returned to his office, before ringing him up again and giving him instructions about an urgent matter. Although every minute or every second of his phone calls to officials of various sectors and units counted for very much, he still let the Party members and officials lead their organizational and ideological life in their respective Party organizations in accordance with the regulations.

Kim Jong Il directed close attention to turning Party cells into ones boundlessly loyal to the Party and the leader, and energetically led the work.

The Party cell is the grassroots organization of the Party. Just as a person can be healthy only when the cells making up the body are strong and function smoothly, so can the party grow strong only when its cells, which constitute the party, are sound and play their role as they should.

In a letter titled *Let Us Strengthen the Party Cells!* addressed to the participants of the National Lecture Meeting of Secretaries of Party Cells convened in May 1991 for the first time in the WPK's history, Kim Jong Il referred to the need to bring up the Party members to be loyalists, to

efficiently organize and guide their life in Party organizations, to intensify the work with the masses of the people, and to enhance the role of the cell secretaries. He taught that "Let us make all Party cells into cells of loyalty!" is an important Party's slogan and the main task to be tackled by the Party organizations.

The national lecture meeting gave rise to a dynamic Partywide campaign to turn Party cells into cells of loyalty in the course of which the working efficiency of the Party cells was further improved.

From late March to early April 1994, when this campaign reached a higher stage, Kim Jong Il proposed the convocation of a national conference of Party cell secretaries. He read the documents related to this meeting, including the report, and solved all the problems concerning the meeting so that the conference could be successful. He also saw that a lecture meeting was held prior to the conference in order to raise the Party cell secretaries' political and practical qualifications and their work ability to a new high.

The national conference marked an important turning-point in building up the might of the Party and speeding up the general advance of socialism by enhancing the functions and role of Party cells in conformity with the requirements for the development of the Party and revolution.

Considering the embodiment of the leader's ideology and leadership to be a basic principle in the building of the people's government, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to constantly maintaining the revolutionary character of the people's government. He resolutely rejected all hues of tendencies and attempts to deny or weaken the Party's leadership of the people's government, and established the Party's leadership system. He also ensured that the people's government formulated various people-oriented policies for correctly embodying the Party's line and policies, and carried them out.

In December 1992, when a national lecture course for officials of the people's government organizations was held, he sent to the participants a letter, titled *Let Us Bring the Advantages of Our People's Government into Fuller Play.* In the letter, he explained the basic principles to be adhered to in the building of people's government to brighten the socialist system by fully displaying the advantages of the people's government, and taught that the Party's leadership is the lifeline of the building of the people's government.

His wise leadership of overall Party building and activities resulted in the Party and the masses of the people making up a strong driving force of revolution woven as a single socio-political organism, and the Party enhancing its functions and role as the supreme leadership body of revolution.

THE YOUNG VANGUARD

Kim Jong Il evolved the theory of attaching importance to the Party, the army and the youth in carrying forward and accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche. He said that the WPK was carrying out revolution relying on young people and that the destiny of young people was the destiny of the Party and of socialism; he channelled great efforts into the development of youth work along with the building of the Party and the army.

In the former socialist countries it was the young people who, contaminated by bourgeois concepts of liberalism, became the first to become troublemakers in society, and stood in the van in demolishing socialism. The historical lessons showed that how to deal with the problem of young people was a key to the promotion of socialism.

Kim Jong Il had channelled great efforts from his early days into youth work on the basis of his full understanding of its importance. He gave the youth league the title of the Supreme Commander's strong reserve force and detachment, and strove to lead the young people to brilliantly carry out their sacred mission and role of carrying forward and consummating the Juche revolutionary cause with pride in being the true young vanguard of the Party.

At a national conference of young activists held in April 1990, Kim Jong Il defined the slogan "When the Party is determined, we can do anything!" as the basic import of the conference and looked into every detail of the meeting.

The conference, held in the presence of Kim Il Sung, fully demonstrated the revolutionary mettle of the young Korean vanguard who were advancing on the road of the Juche revolutionary cause under the unfurled banner of socialism, united single-heartedly behind the leader and the Party, and occasioned the general mobilization of young people for the grand march of the 1990s.

Kim Il Sung founded the Korean Communist Youth League on August 28, 1927, opening up the era of the Juche-oriented youth movement. Kim Jong Il designated this historic August 28 as Youth Day; on August 26,1991, he sent a letter, titled *Young Men and Women, Be the Vanguard Unfailingly Loyal to the Party and the Leader*, to all the young people and workers of the League of Socialist Working Youth, who were greeting their first Youth Day. In the letter, he illuminated the tasks of developing the youth movement in step with the requirements of the developing revolution to defend and burnish the socialist cause. He pointed out that "Young men and women, be the vanguard unfailingly loyal to the Party and the leader!" was the slogan which young people must uphold, and emphasized that all the young people should do their best to become the reliable vanguard of the Juche revolutionary cause under this slogan.

Kim Jong Il proposed convening the Eighth Congress of the League of Socialist Working Youth, and ensured that the congress summed up the glorious road which the Korean youth movement had traversed and fully discussed the tasks and ways for the young people to work as the guard detachment and death-defying corps of the Party.

On January 5, 1993, with the congress just ahead, he met the senior officials in the field of youth work, and clarified the tasks and ways to develop the youth movement to a higher stage.

He said:

" 'Young Men and Women, Be the Guard Detachment and Death-Defying Corps of the Party Who Safeguard and Glorify the People-Centred Socialism of Our Style!'–this is the revolutionary slogan our Party raises for the young people at this moment."

The Eighth Congress of the League of Socialist Working Youth was opened splendidly in Pyongyang on February 18, 1993.

The participants shouted "Kim Il Sung", "Kim Jong Il" and "Youth Vanguard," and sang the song "No Motherland Without You," flying red flags. They swore an oath that if the enemy unleashed a reckless aggressive war, all the five million league members would turn out as five million human bullets and bombs to defeat the enemy and defend the Party, the leader and the socialist homeland at the risk of their lives.

The participants swore before Kim Jong Il as follows:

The Party is our destiny.

We will defend and accomplish the socialist cause without fail.

We are the vanguard and shock brigade of socialist construction.

Defending the homeland is a sacred duty of young people.

The Party's leadership is the life and soul of the League of Socialist Working Youth.

…

With the anti-DPRK and anti-socialist moves of the US imperialists and their stooges mounting to a crescendo, the young people lived up to their pledge that they would become five million human bullets and bombs.

In less than ten days after the issuing in March 1993 of the Supreme Commander's order for putting the whole country into a semi-war state, as many as 1.5 million young people volunteered for service in the People's Army.

The roar of the participants as they vowed during the Eighth Congress of the LSWY to become 5 million human bullets and bombs echoed through the Fifth Congress of the Korean Children's Union held in June 1994, at which children and young people made a pledge to become eight million human bullets and bombs.

Under Kim Jong Il' s leadership, millions of young Korean people came to be able to advance more vigorously as the vanguard of the WPK in the struggle to support and defend the Party, and defend and burnish the socialist cause.

TOWARDS THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE REVOLUTIONARY ECONOMIC STRATEGY

The Korean people's struggle to attain the new long-term objectives for socialist economic construction set by the Sixth Congress of the WPK had to be waged amidst an extremely complicated situation in and around the country.

With the brunt of their anti-socialist offensive directed at the DPRK, the imperialists and reactionaries attempted to isolate and stifle this country economically as well as politically and militarily. Meanwhile, the disappearance of the world socialist market that had ensued from the setbacks of socialism in several countries brought about a radical change in

the DPRK's external economic relations. Given this situation, in order to staunchly defend socialism it was imperative to improve the people's living standards so as to implant an unshakable conviction about socialism in the minds of the people.

At the 21st Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee, held in December 1993, Kim Il Sung proposed to set some years ahead as a period for adjustment, and taught that during this period economic construction should be geared to pursuing an agriculture-first policy, light industry-first policy and trade-first policy so as to elevate the people's living standards to a new stage.

Kim Jong Il actively strove to lead the entire Party, all the people and the whole country in the work of implementing this revolutionary economic strategy of the Party proposed by Kim Il Sung.

He worked hard to familiarize the officials with the requirements of the revolutionary economic strategy and the Party's intention, and inspire them to great endeavours for economic work with full confidence.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on March 1, 1994, titled *Let Us Thoroughly Implement the Revolutionary Economic Strategy of the Party,* he clarified in detail the requirements and main objectives of the revolutionary economic strategy and the Party's intention, and ways to implement them.

Stating that the most important revolutionary task of the Party at the present time was to effect a tangible shift in socialist economic construction by carrying out the revolutionary economic strategy, he said:

"The revolutionary economic strategy advanced by our Party is to thoroughly carry out an agriculture-first policy, light industry-first policy and trade-first policy during the period of adjustment. Along with this, it envisages giving precedence to the coal and electric power industries, and to railway transportation, the vanguards of the national economy, while continuing to develop the metallurgy industry. The strategy is aimed at transforming the country's economic structure in conformity with the changed international circumstances and actual requirements of our national economy– restructuring the economy with the main stress on heavy industry into one with main stress on agriculture and light industry and changing the orientation of foreign trade."

The main objectives of the Party's revolutionary economic strategy were

to radically improve the people's living standards by directing principal efforts to the development of agriculture, light industry and foreign trade, to put production in all economic sectors on a normal footing and bring the might of the existing economic foundations into full play by giving priority to the vanguards of the national economy.

Explaining the significance of the Party's revolutionary economic strategy, he said that during the Fatherland Liberation War defending Height 1211 had been decisive in ensuring victory in the war, whereas at the present time attaining the objectives of the economic strategy was the key to success in smashing the imperialists' anti-DPRK moves of all kinds and defending and glorifying socialism.

Afterwards, he took steps to make the officials study once again the instructions of Kim Il Sung given at the 21st Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee and the resolution of the meeting, so that they could make a fresh start in their work.

In order to successfully carry out the Party's revolutionary economic strategy, it was important to scrupulously organize the economic work and manage the economy efficiently as required by the strategy.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to enhancing the functions and role of the Administration Council and other administrative and economic organs in carrying out the Party's economic strategy.

He made an effort to strengthen the system of the Administration Council, the Administration Council-centred system, so that the Administration Council, as the organ endowed with full responsibility for the national economy, could take unified control of overall economic affairs and map out the economic plan properly in conformity with the Party's economic lines and policies. He saw that all the problems arising out of economic work were reported to the Administration Council and solved under its guidance. He also established iron discipline by which all the officials unconditionally carried out the decisions and orders of the Administration Council.

Kim Jong Il gave detailed instructions that planning should be improved radically and material supply done in a right manner for the successful implementation of the Party's revolutionary economic strategy, and that the leading officials in the economic sector should energetically work with firm conviction by highly displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude.

On several occasions, he said that the Party's revolutionary economic strategy required competent officials for its implementation, and that all the officials must work with full confidence in victory and an indomitable spirit, on the basis of their Juche-oriented viewpoint with regard to reality. He also inspired them with confidence that they could surely make a revolutionary shift in socialist economic construction, since they had the revolutionary economic strategy of the Party and the strong foundations of the self-reliant national economy.

3. AN OUTSTANDING COMMANDER

SUPREME COMMANDER

The Korean people and officers and men of the KPA had long since regarded Kim Jong Il' s leadership as the source of their great honour and pride.

Endowed with intellectual qualities he had inherited from Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Suk, and having learnt military science and skills from his boyhood, Kim Jong Il made a deep study of Kim Il Sung's Juche-oriented military ideology, theory and tactics, and enriched them. He also made imperishable exploits in developing the KPA into a revolutionary force each member of which would be capable of matching a hundred foes, and in defending the gains of socialism.

In due appreciation for his brilliant service to the Juche cause of army building, Kim Jong Il, a member of the Presidium of the Political Bureau and secretary of Party Central Committee, was acclaimed as the First Vice-Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission in May 1990, and as the Supreme Commander of the KPA on December 24, 1991, at the 19th Plenary Meeting of Sixth Party Central Committee.

While conveying the resolution of the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee to the participants in the Conference of Company Political Instructors and, through the conference, to all the other officers and men of the KPA, Kim Il Sung said:

"The plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee held yesterday acclaimed Comrade Kim Jong Il as the Supreme Commander of the KPA,

in accordance with the unanimous desire of all the soldiers and people.

"…

"I hope that all the officers and men will obey Supreme Commander Kim Jong Il's orders without question, regarding them as my own, and support his leadership loyally."

True to the unanimous expectations of the Korean people and officers and men of the KPA, Kim Jong Il made every possible effort to accomplish the cause of army building initiated by Kim Il Sung.

He paid primary attention to training all the soldiers to become genuine revolutionaries boundlessly loyal to the Party and the leader in order to enable the KPA to carry out its mission and role with credit as an army of the leader, the Party and the people both in name and in practice. He established a revolutionary military tone of unconditionally implementing the Supreme Commander's orders and instructions.

He also ensured that efforts were concentrated on perfecting combat readiness without slackening the pace and making each soldier a match for a hundred foes.

In his letter, titled *Let Us Strengthen the Korean People's Army by Intensifying Military and Political Training,* addressed to the participants in a lecture course for officers in charge of training of the KPA in May 1990, Kim Jong Il said:

"In order to establish a revolutionary habit of training throughout the army, the soldiers must assimilate the Juche-oriented outlook on training.

"The Juche-oriented outlook on training is a standpoint and attitude to training with the masses of soldiers, masters of the revolutionary forces and first-hand carriers of a revolutionary war, as its centre. To establish the Juche-oriented outlook on training means making soldiers regard training as an important guarantee for victory in a revolutionary war and consider it as a worthy and genuine part of a soldier's life to actively attend to training.

"The masses of the soldiers constitute a basic element in the composition of a military force; they are the undertakers of a revolutionary war. The combat efficiency of an army and success in war depend on how well they are prepared."

Kim Jong Il ensured the establishment of a revolutionary outlook on training, an outlook based on four principles–Juche character, political and ideological quality, combat efficiency and scientific accuracy–in training, in

order to fill the army with ranks of loyal soldiers fully prepared politically and ideologically, and implement the five principles of training advanced by Kim Il Sung–unshakable revolutionary spirit, elusive and adroit tactics, iron body, marksmanship and rigid discipline.

He paid deep attention to building up solid ranks of commanding and political officers, and enhancing their responsibility and roles. Especially, in order to strengthen companies, the basic combat unit of the KPA and the central link in the whole chain of strengthening the entire army, he suggested the holding of conferences of the company commanders, of political instructors and of quartermasters, at which he gave important instructions about matters of principle arising in the work of consolidating companies politically and ideologically and completing their combat readiness in conformity with the requirements of a modern war. Through the meetings of artillerymen and sappers, and other meetings of all arms and services and special arms held on his recommendation, he made efforts to prepare the cadres of the KPA to be competent commanders and political workers who were boundlessly loyal to the Party and the leader, and equipped with revolutionary drive and grit, build up the KPA's fighting efficiency and step up the modernization of armaments.

He defined unity between officers and men, between army and people and between the Party and the youth league as an important quality of the People's Army, and did his best to get this unity ensured fully in the course of soldiers' service.

His exploits performed in the course of safeguarding the socialist homeland through his wise leadership of the Juche cause of army building won him the title of Marshal of the DPRK in April 1992 and election as the Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission at the Fifth Session of the Ninth Supreme People's Assembly on April 9, 1993.

The year 1992 was a meaningful one, as it greeted Kim Il Sung's 80th birthday and Kim Jong Il's 50th birthday.

On February 7, 1992, Kim Il Sung signed a decree of the Central People's Committee on celebrating February 16, Kim Jong Il's birthday, as a national holiday. Yet, the decree could not be published for three years until February 1995, owing to Kim Jong Il's repeated dissuasion.

In honour of Kim Jong Il's 50th birthday, Kim Il Sung composed an ode as his gift.

Jong Il Peak soars high above Mt. Paektu,
Where the limpid Sobaek meanders.
Can it be the Shining Star's fiftieth birthday already?
Admired by all for his power of pen and sword
Combined with a loyal and filial mind.
Unanimous praise and cheers shake the universe.

February 16, 1992,
Kim Il Sung

Upon receipt of this ode, Kim Jong Il made up his mind to serve the revolution more faithfully, chiseling the meaning of every word of the poem in his mind.

On April 25, 1992, in Kim Il Sung Square in Pyongyang there was held a splendid military parade in celebration of the 60th anniversary of the founding of the KPA in the presence of Generalissimo Kim Il Sung and Supreme Commander Marshal Kim Jong Il.

At the parade, Kim Jong Il acknowledged the congratulations of all the officers and men of the KPA as follows:

"Glory to the heroic officers and men of the Korean People's Army!"

The moment he made this acknowledgement, the whole ranks of the parading units shouted in chorus, "Kim Il Sung," "Kim Jong Il" and "Single-hearted unity."

In celebration of the 40th anniversary of the victory in the Fatherland Liberation War, in July 1993, Kim Jong Il initiated the holding of a meeting of veterans and another spectacular parade, and as well as the building of the grand monument to the Victory in the Fatherland Liberation War, which all served as important occasions for demonstrating the might of the revolutionary forces and strengthening the national defence capabilities.

DPRK-US CONFRONTATION

Kim Jong Il led the Korean people and the People's Army wisely to smash the anti-DPRK and anti-socialist moves of the imperialist allied forces, thus staunchly defending the national dignity and sovereignty.

After the collapse of socialism in the Soviet Union and other East European countries, the US imperialists became more persistent in their

attempts to destroy socialism in the DPRK. With the arrival of 1993, the Korean peninsula became an arena of fierce confrontation between imperialism and socialism.

The United States declared its resumption of the "Team Spirit" joint military exercise it had suspended temporarily and blackmailed the Korean people militarily with its "Team Spirit 93" joint military exercise, the largest so far, involving 200,000 troops and strategic nuclear bombers, super-large nuclear-powered aircraft carriers and other modern means of mass destruction. Besides, it raised the phantom of "nuclear suspicion", thereby aggravating the situation in Korea all the more.

The DPRK had become a party to the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty in December 1985, with the intention of removing the US nuclear blackmail against it and realizing denuclearization on the Korean peninsula.

The US imperialists did not cease to threaten the DPRK with nuclear weapons even after the latter's entry into the NPT. Later, the United States declared that it had withdrawn its nuclear weapons from south Korea and would suspend the "Team Spirit" joint military exercise. The DPRK signed the Safeguards Accord with the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) in 1992, and allowed several rounds of ad hoc inspection by the IAEA, which went rather smoothly. Before the sixth round of inspection, however, the IAEA abruptly asked for special inspection of two military sites in this country.

As the Korean side rejected this outrageous demand, the United States threatened the DPRK, claiming a collective sanction. Both Japan and south Korea joined the US frantic anti-DPRK racket. Owing to the US imperialists' scheme, all the dialogues between the north and the south of Korea were frozen; a grave hindrance came to stand in the way of implementing the much-expected north-south agreement on non-aggression. A touch-and-go situation was created in Korea.

On March 8, 1993, Kim Jong Il issued order No. 0034 of the KPA Supreme Commander "On declaring a state of war readiness for the whole country, all the people and the entire army" to resolutely cope with the pressure and war moves of the US imperialists. The order read:

"The US imperialists are watching for a chance to provoke another war by mobilizing every type of modern weapon, with the spearhead of their aggression directed at the northern half of the country. But they have

seriously miscalculated. Our people are not frightened by the 'Team Spirit' joint military exercise that involves hundreds of thousands of men and weapons of mass destruction, and our army will not shrink for fear of war. We have the heroic Korean people and the People's Army, each soldier of which is a match for a hundred foes. They defeated the one-million-strong Kwantung Army of the Japanese imperialists in the snowstorms of Mt. Paektu and the armies of the imperialist United States and its 15 satellite states during the Fatherland Liberation War. We also have the strength of the single-hearted unity between the leader, the Party and the people, and the unbreakable strength of the ties of kinship between the army and the people that are sealed in blood. Our People's Army has grown into an invincible, revolutionary armed forces equipped with modern means of attack and defence, all the people are under arms and the whole country has been fortified; we are fully prepared to annihilate the aggressors at one blow. Our people, who hold dear the independence of the nation and the peace of the country, do not want war, but they will not beg for peace at the cost of their dignity. If the US imperialists and the south Korean puppets provoke another war, our people and the People's Army will fight to the death for the sake of the Party, the leader and our style of people-centred socialism that has been achieved at the cost of their blood, and will thus deal a crushing blow to the aggressors and raise the dignity and honour of heroic Korea even further. The enemy must clearly understand that he shall not trample with impunity upon an inch of land or a blade of grass in the DPRK. In view of the grave situation prevailing in our country owing to the schemes of the US imperialists and the south Korean puppets to provoke another war, and as self-defensive measures to safeguard the security of our Republic and people, I order the following:

1. The whole country, all the people and the entire army shall, on March 9, 1993, switch to a state of readiness for war.

2. All the soldiers of the three services of the Korean People's Army–the land, naval and air forces–and of the Korean People's Security Forces, and all the members of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards and the Young Red Guards shall display high revolutionary vigilance and closely observe every move by the enemy, and shall be fully ready for action to crush the enemy at a stroke should he attack.

3. All the people shall equip themselves fully with our Party's Juche

view on war and, with a hammer or a sickle in one hand and a rifle in the other, produce a great upswing in socialist economic construction.

Kim Jong Il,

Supreme Commander of the Korean People's Army"

The order called forth a stormy response.

All the soldiers of the three services of the Korean People's Army–the land, naval and air forces–and of the Korean People's Security Forces, and all the members of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards and the Young Red Guards guarded the country on the land, in the sea and in the air, fully ready for action. All the workers, peasants and intellectuals turned out to strengthen the People's Army and consolidate the all-people defence system, and effected a revolutionary upswing in socialist construction, holding a hammer or a sickle in one hand and a rifle in the other. A great many young people volunteered to join or re-join the army.

During the days of the state of semi-war, Kim Jong Il was constantly in the operations room, sharply analyzing and sizing up the ever-changing disposition of the enemy troops and the situation on the front line, and commanding the KPA. He helped the members of the general staff who were working night and day together with him to lead the war to victory without firing a shot.

On March 12, the DPRK government issued a statement on its withdrawal from the NPT to safeguard the independence and supreme interests of the country from the unreasonable demand of the United States and the IAEA for special inspection. This was a just and self-defensive measure against the US imperialists' moves to provoke a nuclear war and the unreasonable action taken by the IAEA against the DPRK.

Frightened by the stern attitude of the WPK and the DPRK government, the US imperialists were compelled to announce the suspension of their "Team Spirit 93" joint military exercise ahead of schedule, and the IAEA gave up its demand for a "special inspection."

On March 24, Kim Jong Il issued an order on the lifting of the state of war readiness to the whole country, all the people and the entire army.

The sharp confrontation between the DPRK and the United States came to be replaced by DPRK-US talks.

In the talks, the United States stalled for time, putting up "preconditions" such as the DPRK's acceptance of IAEA inspections and

the resumption of talks between the north and the south of Korea.

Given this situation, Kim Il Sung met in June 1994 the former US President Carter, creating an opportunity for resuming the deadlocked DPRK-US talks.

While leading the confrontation with the US imperialists to victory, Kim Jong Il took important measures to ensure lasting peace on the Korean peninsula in accordance with the new situation. The US imperialists had been violating the Armistice Agreement and destroying armistice supervisory bodies systematically, so creating a dangerous vacuum in security on the Korean peninsula. Moreover, due to their reckless military provocations and large-sized war exercises, the Demilitarized Zone had ceased to exist in reality.

Perceiving this situation clearly, Kim Jong Il brought forward an initiative for replacing the old armistice system with a new peace mechanism. The DPRK government advanced a proposal to put his initiative into practice.

4. FOR THE GREAT UNITY OF THE NATION

In support of Kim Il Sung's plan for national reunification, Kim Jong Il inspired the entire nation with fresh enthusiasm for reunification.

Kim Il Sung had said that the greatest gift that he could give the people was the country's reunification, and devoted all his efforts to its realization.

Kim Jong Il said that Kim Il Sung was troubled so much about national reunification, the Korean people's most cherished desire, that his hair had turned grey.

In support of Kim Il Sung's idea that the community of the nation which had been consolidated through its history of 5,000 years was greater than the differences in systems and ideologies caused by temporary division and that the common interests of the nation striving for reunification through unity were more precious than the interests of individual classes and strata, Kim Jong Il ensured that all political parties, organizations and people from all walks of life in the north, south and abroad joined efforts in the nationwide movement and reunify the country to put into effect Kim Il Sung's plan for national reunification through federation.

All the political parties and public organizations in the northern half of Korea made every effort to hold a pan-national conference aimed at opening a new phase for the country's reunification by national unity.

The Coalition for the National Democratic Movement (Jonminryon), a federation of opposition democratic forces in south Korea, expressed full support for the proposed conference and promoted the contact of working-level delegates. The Rev. Mun Ik Hwan, an adviser to Jonminryon, in his seventies, visited Pyongyang, surmounting the barrier of division, in the spring of 1989. He met Kim Il Sung, whom he had long yearned to see, and conducted patriotic activities for reunification during his stay in the DPRK

Visits to Pyongyang by the Rev. Mun Ik Hwan and a delegate of "Jondaehyop" (National Council of Student Representatives) stimulated the Korean nation to greater enthusiasm for the country's reunification. In this situation, the Korean compatriots at home and from abroad who participated in the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students made a grand march for peaceful reunification, shouting the slogan, "From Mt. Paektu to Mt. Halla." Then they held a meeting for the promotion of the country's reunification at Panmunjom on the DMZ. At the meeting, they decided to hold a pan-national conference of Koreans from the north, south and abroad for peace and the reunification of the country at Panmunjom in August 1990, on the occasion of the 45th anniversary of the country's liberation, and appealed to all the Korean people to make 1995 a historic year for the achievement of national reunification.

However, those who tried to keep the country divided placed great obstacles in the way of the preparations for the pan-national conference.

The south Korean authorities labelled the organizations which had sponsored the pan-national conference "organizations benefiting the enemy" and oppressed the people concerned, and at the same time schemed to foil the conference by instigating Right-wing reactionary organizations. The delegates from the north and abroad who started the "Mt. Paektu-Mt. Halla Grand March for the Promotion of National Reunification" on Mt. Paektu in August 1990 held the pan-national conference at Panmunjom. The meeting unanimously accepted Kim Il Sung's plan for the country's reunification through federation as the only fair and reasonable programme for reunification. In November that year, the Pan-National Alliance for the Country's Reunification (Pomminryon), a national federation of patriotic

forces for reunification, was formed. The formation of Pomminryon was the brilliant result of the energetic struggle by the forces in the north, south and abroad to prepare the dynamism for the country's reunification by means of great national unity. It was of great significance in systematizing the reunification movement.

Kim Jong Il made sure that all the contacts between the fellow countrymen served as opportunities to join their will and efforts to prepare the forces of the country's reunification. When a soccer game was held for the first time between the north and the south in the autumn of 1990, the south Korean authorities proposed to revive the name the "Kyong-Pyong Soccer Game" which had been used before the country's liberation. (Kyong is an abbreviation for Seoul and Pyong is an abbreviation for Pyongyang– Tr.) But Kim Jong Il saw to it that the game was held under the name, "North-South Reunification Soccer Game", and that the concert of the compatriots from the north, south and abroad be held under the name, "Pan-National Reunification Concert."

When the question of holding the "Traditional Concert Seeing 1990 Out" was raised, he had its name changed to the "Reunification Concert Seeing 1990 Out", saying that it was necessary to link its purpose and significance to national reunification and to adorn the end of the first year of the 90s with enthusiasm for reunification.

As a result, the north and the south jointly cheered on the Korean teams at the 11th Asian Games held in Beijing, the reunification soccer games were held in Pyongyang and Seoul, and the "Pan-National Reunification Concert" and the "Reunification Concert Seeing 1990 Out" were held with success. In addition, the north-south joint teams were formed and participated in the 41st World Table Tennis Championships and the 6th World Youth Football Championships.

In full support of the *Ten-Point Programme of the Great Unity of the Whole Nation for the Reunification of the Country*, the great charter of great national unity and the programme of reunification, which was advanced by Kim Il Sung in April 1993, Kim Jong Il energetically led the struggle to bring about a turning-point in the effort to reunify the country by the concerted efforts of the entire nation.

The Government, political parties and public organizations of the DPRK, organizations of overseas compatriots and Pomminryon published

statements and talks, held meetings and symposiums, and conducted a signature campaign in support of the ten-point programme of the great unity of the whole nation.

Kim Jong Il regarded it as a link in the struggle for national reunification to bring back Ri In Mo and other long-term prisoners held in south Korea because they refused to renounce their ideology, and worked hard for their repatriation.

Ri In Mo, a war correspondent of the Korean People's Army during the Fatherland Liberation War, had been wounded and captured by the enemy while fighting as one of the People's Guerrillas in the Jiri Mountains. His will for national reunification had been unbreakable even though he had spent 34 years behind bars. When his memoirs were published in south Korea and his existence was made known to the world, Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il were more pleased than anybody else.

Political parties and public organizations in the DPRK sent letters to the south Korean Red Cross Society demanding the repatriation of Ri In Mo, appealed to the Red Cross societies in all countries and international organizations to carry on a solidarity campaign for his repatriation, and strongly demanded his repatriation in all talks between the north and the south.

In February 1993, Kim Jong Il sent a letter to Ri's family, saying, "Our Party has not forgotten Ri In Mo, the incarnation of faith and will." When Ri In Mo was finally repatriated, Kim Jong Il had a national welcome organized in spite of the grave situation in which war might break out any minute as a result of the declaration of the state of semi-war. He also looked after the returnee, taking measures for the restoration of his health.

At a time when the Korean people were vigorously fighting for national reunification, frustrating the manoeuvres of those who were bent on keeping the country divided, and when socialism was undergoing trials in the international arena, Ri In Mo's return to the socialist motherland inspired the Korean people with a higher sense of pride and confidence in the socialist motherland, strengthened their will to achieve the country's reunification and showed that Korean-style socialism was invincible.

In this way, the struggle for national reunification was vigorously conducted in an organized way in the north, south and abroad, and thus the motive force of the nation was further strengthened and the desire of all the

fellow countrymen for national reunification was greatly enhanced, opening a new phase for expanding and developing the reunification movement on a nationwide scale.

5. FOR THE REBUILDING OF SOCIALISM

In connection with the collapse of socialism and the revival of capitalism in some countries, the imperialists and reactionaries clamoured as if capitalism had "triumphed" and socialism had "come to an end." This caused ideological confusion among the people.

In this situation, Kim Jong Il gave a correct answer to the question of why socialism had been experiencing setbacks and the relevant lessons, and showed the way to the victory of the socialist cause and its accomplishment in his talks to the senior officials of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea on January 3, 1992, under the title *The Historical Lesson in Building Socialism and the General Line of Our Party.*

He said that the way to socialism is an untrodden path, a thorny path of revolution that has to be traversed in the face of sharp antagonism and through an uncompromising struggle against imperialism and therefore, trials and difficulties will stand in the way of socialism's advance, and unexpected situations may arise. The frustration of socialism and the revival of capitalism in some countries, when viewed in the light of the main tide of historical development, is only a temporary, local phenomenon, he added.

Pointing out that only by clarifying the fundamental cause of the frustration of socialism, and learning lessons from it, is it possible to defend and advance the cause of socialism, Kim Jong Il said:

"In short, the basic reason for the frustration of socialism in some countries is that they did not put the main emphasis on strengthening the motive force for building socialism and on enhancing its role; they failed to understand the essence of socialism, of focussing on the masses of the people, the makers of history."

Saying that socialism in some countries was frustrated also because they did not adhere consistently to the fundamental principles of socialism and because they did not strengthen international solidarity based on independence in relations between the parties of socialist countries, he

instructed that they should draw lessons from their mistakes and rebuild the socialist movement on a new basis, and lead the socialist cause to a great new upsurge.

The Communist Parties and Workers' Parties in many countries of the world learned serious lessons from the situations in the Soviet Union and the Eastern European countries, and showed signs of rebuilding the international communist movement on a new basis.

In April 1992, the heads and delegations of the Communist Parties and the Workers' Parties of many countries as well as of progressive parties aspiring after socialism came to Korea to celebrate the 80th birthday of Kim Il Sung.

During their stay in Korea, they became convinced that Korea is, indeed, the bulwark of socialism and that they should revive socialism centred on Korea. They had multilateral and bilateral contacts, and proposed taking the opportunity to draft and publish a document expressing their firm will to defend the cause of socialism.

Thus the historic Pyongyang Declaration, "Let Us Defend and Advance the Cause of Socialism!" was adopted on April 20, 1992. It was signed by the 48 heads and delegates from 70 parties across the world, including the Workers' Party of Korea.

The declaration pinpointed the situations in which socialism had been frustrated in some countries, clarified the cause of its collapse, the truth of socialism and the inevitability of its victory, and set the tasks of defending and advancing the cause of socialism.

The declaration continued:

"We will advance under the banner of socialism in firm unity with all progressive political parties, organizations and peoples of the world who are striving to defend socialism against capitalism and imperialism.

"Let us all fight to open up the future of mankind with a firm conviction in the cause of socialism.

"Final victory is in store for the people fighting in unity for socialism!

"The socialist cause shall not perish."

The communists and revolutionaries in all countries warmly welcomed the "Pyongyang Declaration," saying that it was the "Communist Manifesto" of the present era. In a few years after its publication, more than 220 political parties turned out in the new struggle, regarding it as their

common programme. Kim Jong Il regarded it as his noble mission to help the progressive political parties in many countries to become a powerful force which thinks and acts independently.

He published the treatise *On the Fundamentals of Revolutionary Party Building* on October 10, 1992, the 47th anniversary of the founding of the Workers' Party of Korea. The treatise gave a scientific answer to the important question as to how a working-class party should be built.

On the basis of the historical experience in the building of the Workers' Party of Korea, he said that the fundamental principles which should be maintained firmly in building the revolutionary party of the working class were, first, to build the party on the basis of a scientific and revolutionary guiding ideology, second, to develop it into a mass party of the working people and third, to firmly establish a monolithic ideology and leadership within it.

He defined the strengthening of the party's unity as the central task in party building, and advanced the consistent policy of building the party with stress on ideology. He explained that establishing a monolithic ideology was the basic duty of the party and that the basic mission of the party was to effect its political leadership of the whole society.

The struggle to defend the socialist cause was accompanied by a serious ideological and theoretical confrontation with those who slandered and abused socialism. Taking advantage of the collapse of socialism and the revival of capitalism in some countries, the imperialists and reactionaries slandered socialism as "totalitarianism," a "barracks-like" setup and an "administrative command" system.

Kim Jong Il published the discourse, *Abuses of Socialism Are Intolerable,* in *Kulloja,* the official magazine of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, on March 1, 1993, in which he exposed the slanders against socialism ideologically and theoretically.

He made it clear that such abusive words as "totalitarianism," "barracks-like" and "administrative command" were no different in essence from the pernicious anti-socialist propaganda which the imperialists have conducted since the appearance of socialism in the world. He said that their abuses were the repetition, in different phraseology, of the malicious propaganda spread by the imperialists who had said that socialism was an inhuman society with neither freedom nor democracy. He declared that the slanders

of the renegades from socialism were nothing but a desperate attempt to justify their treachery of having made a mess of socialism and to prevent the rebuilding of socialism.

Thanks to the energetic activities of Kim Jong Il, the advantages of socialism and the inevitability of its victory were proved, and socialism, which had been suffering from frustrations and trials, entered the road of revival with confidence.

6

(JULY 1994–DECEMBER 2000)

1. THE LEADER IS IMMORTALIZED

Kim Jong Il suffered the pain of the greatest loss in July 1994. President Kim Il Sung, who had been working heart and soul in the cause of independence for the masses, for the prosperity of the country and the people's happiness and for national reunification, died from a sudden illness on July 8, 1994. This was an event of the bitterest grief.

The death of Kim Il Sung at the historic moment when a new phase was being opened in the Korean revolution and national reunification meant the greatest loss to the Party and the revolution.

Kim Jong Il got the period of condolence set from July 8 to July 17.

Kim Jong Il took charge of the mourning ceremony at the Kumsusan Presidential House, where Kim Il Sung lay in state. He also paid frequent visits to Mansu Hill, where Kim Il Sung's bronze statue stood. Once crowds of Pyongyang citizens were thronging deep into the night in the rain to the bronze statue to express their condolences, among them a group of young students covering a wreath with their jackets even though they themselves were soaked with rain. Kim Jong Il gazed at them for a long while. "Our people adore and support their leader," he said to officials the following day, "with the noblest of thoughts and feelings, spirit and morality which are beyond comparison with those of any other people in the world. Our people are blessed with the leader, and our cadres are blessed with the people. The leader educated the people into excellent people who understand the leader and the Party. We must take great and lasting pride in this fact."

All the Korean people, young and old, men and women, became mourners, and day and night during the period of condolence they paid visits to the deceased, his bronze statues, the monuments to his

achievements, and the places of mourning ceremonies, took charge of the ceremonies and expressed the deepest grief, shedding hot tears.

At the sad news, the south Korean people, overseas compatriots, and other people around the world became grief-stricken.

South Korean people set up censer stands in Seoul and many other places, and held ceremonies of condolence and memorial services. Students and other young people and those in opposition protested to the authorities that they had neglected to dispatch an official condolence delegation to the north and about their repression of those who had expressed their condolences.

Chongryon and other organizations of overseas compatriots, as well as individual Koreans abroad, sent telegrams of condolence and wreaths to their homeland, and held mourning ceremonies. Many delegations and compatriots visited their homeland to offer their condolences before the deceased.

Heads of State, party leaders and a large number of other people from 166 countries visited the embassies and other missions of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea to express their condolences, sent nearly 4,000 telegrams of condolence to the DPRK and laid more than 3,300 wreaths before portraits of the deceased. They expressed deep sympathy, saying that a great star of socialism had fallen, and that they had lost the greatest veteran statesman of the present era, the great bulwark of the international revolutionary movement. Many countries, the United Nations and other international organizations set condolence days and periods, and hoisted flags at half-mast. The UN Secretary General made a condolence statement, saying that President Kim Il Sung was a great man who would be long remembered in history.

The Korean people especially felt ever-deepening grief as the moment of bidding their last farewell to the deceased was approaching.

In consideration of the bitter grief of the Korean people, Kim Jong Il took measures to extend the mourning period, and did everything to hold the funeral ceremony on the highest level and in the Korean style.

Kim Jong Il ignored the custom of using a gun carriage to pull the hearse of the Head of State, and saw to it that the car which Kim Il Sung had used in his lifetime was made the hearse and decorated with magnolias and a large portrait set in front, and followed by trucks carrying the wreaths.

The portrait was a brightly smiling one which had been painted after a photograph carefully chosen by Kim Jong Il prior to the funeral.

When he received the report that the portrait had been completed, Kim Jong Il went to the studio, and looked at it carefully, both close at hand and at a distance. Three times he turned to leave the studio on that day, but each time he checked himself and returned to gaze again at the portrait, and said that the more he looked at the portrait, the more clearly could he feel the brightly smiling face of the President in his lifetime, and how better it would have been if the smiling portrait had been hung in public in his lifetime.

On July 19, the day of the funeral, all the Koreans burst into wailing, unable to suppress their grief and longing for the deceased at the sight of the smiling portrait.

Foreigners who saw the scene of the funeral said that the smiling portrait of one man had made everyone cry.

On July 20, the national memorial service for Kim Il Sung was held solemnly at Kim Il Sung Square.

In its live transmission of the scene of the funeral, CNN television of the United States said: The north Korean people held the funeral of President Kim Il Sung, regarding it as their own father's funeral. When he was alive, the President had said that north Korea was one family, but the Western people did not understand the meaning. The funeral on Tuesday, however, clearly showed that the north Korean people respected President Kim Il Sung as their own father.

Kim Jong Il commented that the tears shed by the Korean people during the mourning period were the symbol of the single-hearted unity of the leader, the Party and the masses. Reflecting the Korean people's earnest wish to hold Kim Il Sung in high respect as the eternal sun and as the father of socialist Korea, Kim Jong Il raised the slogans: "The great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung will always be with us," and "Let us arm ourselves more firmly with the revolutionary ideas of the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung!"

In those days, the documentary films, *The Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung Will Be Immortal* and *The Year 1994 in a Great Career,* an epic, *Our Eternal Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung,* and a paean, *The Leader Will Always Be with Us,* were created as masterpieces and issued.

Moreover, large brightly smiling portraits of Kim Il Sung, and the slogan "The great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung will always be with us," were put up in streets and villages, and epigraphs in praise of the greatness of Kim Il Sung were inscribed on rocks on Mt. Kumgang and Mt. Myohyang.

Kim Jong Il made every effort, to preserve the late Kim Il Sung with the best care by building the Kumsusan Memorial Palace as the sacred temple of Juche.

While going over the blueprint of the Kumsusan Memorial Palace, Kim Jong Il instructed the officials concerned to arrange a separate hall and erect a standing marble statue of the late President in that hall. He said that the statue should be a lifelike image of Kim Il Sung at the time he worked in the Kumsusan Presidential House, and that the posture of Kim Il Sung when meeting people and foreign guests or when posing with them for photographs was best known to the world, and made sure that the statue was made in that style with the morning glow in the background.

The Kumsusan Memorial Palace was declared open to the public on the occasion of the first anniversary of the death of Kim Il Sung.

Later, on July 8, 1997, the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, the Central Military Commission of the WPK, the National Defence Commission of the DPRK, the Central People's Committee of the DPRK and the Administration Council of the DPRK adopted a joint resolution, under the title, "On immortalizing the Revolutionary Career of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung and His Imperishable Achievements." In accordance with this resolution, the Juche era, starting with the year 1912, when Kim Il Sung was born, was established, and the 15th of April was made the Day of the Sun.

On September 5, 1998, the First Session of the Tenth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK adopted a new Socialist Constitution. The preamble of the constitution stipulates that Kim Il Sung is the eternal President of the DPRK, and that the constitution is the Kim Il Sung Constitution that codifies his idea of nation building and his achievements in nation building.

Kim Jong Il, who sets an example of communist morality by giving special prominence to the revolutionary forerunners in his revolutionary practice, published in December 1995 a discourse under the title, *Respecting the Forerunners of the Revolution Is a Noble Moral Obligation of Revolutionaries.*

In the discourse, Kim Jong Il made it clear that respect for the revolutionary forerunners, especially loyalty to the leader, the highest representative of the revolutionary forerunners–respect and loyalty prompted by the noblest sense of moral obligation–would provide the possibility of carrying forward and accomplishing the socialist cause, the cause of independence of the masses.

The discourse again clearly showed the noble morality and humanity of the Korean communists.

2. IN SUPPORT OF THE LEADER'S LAST INSTRUCTIONS

Kim Jong Il, enduring the heart-rending pain of loss with a strong will, roused the entire Party, the whole country and all the people to the struggle to carry out the late President's instructions.

Comforting grief-stricken officials, he said that in no country were all the people so closely united behind their leader as in Korea, that the tears shed by the wailing people were not only tears of grief over the loss of their leader, but also the tears of a firm faith and pledge to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by the leader, in loyal support of the Party's leadership as wished by the leader in his lifetime, and that that was most precious for them. He earnestly instructed that they should change their grief into redoubled strength and courage, and stir themselves to carry out the President's instructions.

At a meeting of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee on July 17, 1994, Kim Jong Il discussed with the officials the measures to improve economic work as quickly as possible, as Kim Il Sung had wished in his lifetime, and implement his instructions given at the consultative meeting on economic affairs on July 5 and 6, 1994. The historic concluding speech made by Kim Il Sung at the consultative meeting had outlined the economic programme for the development of a Juche-oriented economy which would never be affected by any economic blockade of the imperialists.

Kim Jong Il ensured that all the cadres listened to Kim Il Sung's instructions, which had been tape-recorded, and turned out as one man to implement them.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on October 16, 1994, after the 100th day memorial service, the talk under the title, *Let Us Accomplish the Great Leader's Cause with Lasting Respect for Him,* Kim Jong Il re-emphasized the task of carrying out the last instructions of Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il said that he felt more keenly the greatness of the President after his death, that the President had died in his office while working hard for the Party, for the revolution and for the country and the people till the last moment of his life, and that in this respect, too, and in view of the fact that he had cleared up everything before his death, he was the greatest man who ever lived. He added that they should hold the President in high respect as their leader for ever, and do everything as the President had done.

Kim Jong Il said, "I will make sure that the instructions, which the leader gave us historically while leading the revolution and construction, are carried out by regarding them as the only guideline for hundreds and thousands of years."

Declaring that not only the President's instructions on July 5 and 6, 1994, but all the instructions he had given in his lifetime were his behests, Kim Jong Il energetically led all the sectors and units to carry out the instructions.

During the 100-day mourning period, Kim Jong Il sent the cadres of the Party and the government and the senior officials of the national organizations to the Yonbaek Plain, on the occasion of the first anniversary of Kim Il Sung's field guidance to the plain, to encourage the farmers, who had implemented his instructions with credit.

Determined to finish the construction of the Chongryu Bridge and the Kumrung Tunnel No 2, projects which had been planned by Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il, Supreme Commander of the Korean People's Army, issued an order in November 1994, titled, "On Building the Chongryu Bridge (second stage) and the Kumrung Tunnel No.2 in Pyongyang," and made sure that the projects were finished by October 10, 1995, the 50th anniversary of the founding of the Party.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to the reconstruction of King Tangun's Mausoleum, which was under reconstruction, and provided all the necessary conditions for the project.

Inspecting the rebuilt mausoleum at the end of October 1994, Kim Jong Il

recollected with deep emotion the fact that Kim Il Sung had got King Tangun, who had been considered a mythological being for a long time, proved as the real father of the Korean nation, and had had the mausoleum reconstructed in a splendid manner. Saying that if Kim Il Sung had seen the reconstructed mausoleum, he would have been greatly pleased, Kim Jong Il instructed that the mausoleum should be perfectly landscaped, and carefully preserved and managed because it was a national treasure to be handed down to posterity.

Regretting the failure to finish the construction of the Pyongyang-Hyangsan Tourist Motorway when Kim Il Sung was alive, Kim Jong Il ensured that the project was finished quickly.

Kim Jong Il sent a letter to the people who were greeting the New Year's Day in 1995. The letter read:

"We have seen out 1994 in tears of blood, and are seeing the New Year in.

"Let all of us work hard with one mind and purpose, as befits the fighters and followers of the great leader to make our country, our motherland, more prosperous."

He paid a visit to Kim Il Sung early in the morning, greeted him piously, and then left without delay on a field guidance trip.

In compliance with instructions of Kim Il Sung to celebrate the 50th anniversary of the founding of the Party in a grand manner, Kim Jong Il proposed the construction of the monument to the Party's founding, and gave energetic guidance to the project to have it constructed in a splendid manner. He explained the theme and content of the monument, and fixed its site in East Pyongyang on the axis of Kim Il Sung's bronze statue on Mansu Hill. He got the slogan, "Long live the Workers' Party of Korea, which organizes and guides all the victories of the Korean people!" carved in relief, and gave detailed instructions on how to form the towers in the shape of a hammer, a sickle and a writing brush, and the statues in relief. Thanks to his energetic guidance, the monument was constructed excellently, so as to hand down to posterity the achievements made under the leadership of Kim Il Sung, who had founded the Party and had developed it into the revolutionary party of Juche.

On October 2, 1995, Kim Jong Il published a treatise titled, *The Workers' Party of Korea Is the Party of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung,* and thus re-affirmed his unshakable determination to carry forward and develop

Kim Il Sung's ideas and achievements faithfully, and accomplish his cause. He also paid close attention to the creation and dissemination of the song, *Hold High the Red Flag!*

When there was a flood in the Sinuiju area in August 1995, Kim Jong Il ordered out a large number of soldiers of the People's Army, together with helicopters and amphibious vehicles, to rescue the flood victims. He also sent food, medicines and consumer goods to them.

To put an end to national division and reunify the country is the foremost task of the Korean nation, as well as Kim Il Sung's last instructions. Reunifying the country as soon as possible was one of the tasks to which Kim Il Sung devoted his greatest attention till the last moment of his life.

In the summer of 1994, Kim Il Sung changed the situation of sharpening antagonism and confrontation into that of dialogue and negotiation, and initiated a new turning point in the struggle for the reunification of the country. On July 7 the same year, he signed a document relating to the question of national reunification, picturing in his mind the day when the Korean people would live in a reunified country.

Kim Jong Il got a monument built at Panmunjom, inscribed with Kim Il Sung's autograph and the date that Kim Il Sung had signed the document on the day before his death. He took various measures on his own initiative to reunify the country in line with the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity, which had been proposed by Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il thus devoted all his thinking and activity to effecting a decisive change in the work of accomplishing the socialist cause in line with Kim Il Sung's instructions, and to exalting the dignity of Kim Il Sung's nation in the eyes of the world.

3. ARMY-CENTRED LEADERSHIP OF THE REVOLUTION

WITH THE PEOPLE'S ARMY AS THE PILLAR, THE MAIN FORCE, OF THE REVOLUTION

Kim Jong Il has evolved his original army-centred politics while implementing Kim Il Sung's idea of attaching importance to the army,

strengthened the People's Army so that it is unconquerable, and safeguarded the flag of socialism with the strength of the army.

The Koreans started the revolution with arms in hand, won back their lost country by armed struggle, and maintained the dignity and sovereignty of their country by means of arms. Kim Jong Il is firmly determined to defend socialism and accomplish this cause with arms.

Because of the anti-socialist manoeuvres of the allied imperialist forces aimed at isolating and stifling the DPRK, manoeuvres that had been stepped up with the collapse of socialism in the Eastern European countries, and because of natural calamities that had continued for several years, the Korean revolution found itself in an extremely difficult situation.

Having sized up the situation at home and abroad in the mid-1990s, Kim Jong Il put forward the idea of giving weight to arms, the idea that the army is the Party, the state and the people at the same time, and that peace and socialism depend on armed might.

He encouraged the whole society to emulate the revolutionary spirit being displayed highly among the soldiers.

Early in January 1995, after seeing out 1994 in tears of blood, he inspected a unit of the People's Army, and early in February the same year paid a visit to the women soldiers of an artillery unit who were guarding the east coast of Korea. On his visit he called them women revolutionaries. As a result, these small units became known to the country as symbols of the beginning of army-centred politics.

Kim Jong Il continued to inspect units of different levels, their observation posts and even an outpost of the civil police on the forward edge of the front line, treading rugged paths to see his soldiers. In the course of this, he witnessed scenes vibrant with the noble thoughts and feelings of the soldiers of the People's Army everywhere he visited. Among them were heroic soldiers who had sacrificed their lives without hesitation for the sake of their leader, and who were determined to guard their leader with their lives as was the case with the soldiers who had constructed the Anbyon Youth Power Station by digging tunnels at the risk of their lives, shouting the slogan, "Let us not see the blue sky over the country before carrying out the Supreme Commander's orders!"

Kim Jong Il held up their noble thoughts and feelings–the spirit of protecting their leader with their lives, the spirit of carrying out his orders at

the risk of their lives, the heroic self-sacrificing spirit–as the revolutionary spirit of soldiers, and encouraged the whole society to follow their example.

In his talk on March 17, 1997, to the senior officials of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, titled *On Emulating the Revolutionary Spirit of Soldiers,* Kim Jong Il gave all sectors and organizations the task of learning the spirit of the soldiers, and explained how to emulate this spirit. On February 8, 1999, when the whole country was throbbing with the atmosphere of emulating the revolutionary spirit, and when the army had grown stronger, he declared that his leadership was army-centred leadership, and that his politics was army-centred politics.

By army-centred politics he meant finding solutions to all problems arising in the revolution and construction on the principle of giving priority to military affairs, and pushing forward the socialist cause as a whole by relying on the People's Army as the pillar.

Army-centred statesmanship is the continuation and development of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary leadership that attached particular importance to the army.

On September 5, 1998, when the effectiveness of army-centred statesmanship was being substantiated, the First Session of the Tenth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK adopted a new Socialist Constitution which stipulates the state structure with the National Defence Commission at the helm.

Kim Jong Il gave primary importance to strengthening the People's Army as the main force of the revolution and as the pillar of the country to meet the requirement of his army-centred policy, and gave wise leadership to this work. Paying great attention to the politico-ideological education of soldiers, he ensured that information on the achievements made by the Party and the leader in building up the army was disseminated on the occasion of the Day of the Sun, the Army Day and other major anniversaries. He also saw to it that the distinguished services rendered by O Jung Hup, Ri Su Bok, Kil Yong Jo[37] and other heroes Korea had produced in different periods were given wide publicity, and that the entire army followed their examples.

Under his leadership, ideological work in the People's Army was directed at equipping the soldiers with the spirit of guarding the leader with

their lives, the spirit of acting as human bullets and bombs and the self-sacrificing spirit; and the "Campaign for the Title of O Jung Hup's Seventh Regiment" spread throughout the army under the slogan, "Let the entire army become today's Seventh Regiment that protects the revolutionary leadership with their lives!"

Kim Jong Il devoted great efforts to building up the force of commanding officers and improving their military qualifications in order to increase the combat efficiency of the People's Army.

He also paid close attention to modernizing the weapons and equipment of the People's Army, and put efforts into the development of military science and the munitions industry, ensuring the production of modern weapons and equipment capable of destroying the enemy who encroaches on the sovereignty of Korea from any part of the globe.

He gave prominence to the People's Army as not only the defenders of the socialist country but as the creators of happiness for the people and the main pillar for the building of a powerful nation.

He assigned the soldiers of the People's Army to the major projects to implement the President's last instructions, and encouraged them to carry them out with credit. He gave the soldiers the task of carrying out the important projects that had been planned by Kim Il Sung in his lifetime, among them the construction of the Chongryu Bridge (second stage) and the Kumrung Tunnel No. 2 in Pyongyang, the Anbyon Youth Power Station, the Wolbisan Power Station, the Pyongyang-Hyangsan Tourist Motorway, and the development of a recreation ground on Mt. Kuwol. He spoke highly of the soldiers' ideological and spiritual mettle shown during the construction.

Kim Jong Il planned the building of a powerful nation and sent soldiers to the front of the main effort–agriculture, and the coal and power industries–to make a breakthrough in these sectors.

The soldiers of the People's Army opened the way to advance for carrying out the major projects assigned by Kim Jong Il, under the slogan, "Let us undertake both national defence and socialist construction!"

By evolving army-centred politics and by dint of his army-centred revolutionary leadership, Kim Jong Il has developed the People's Army into the main force of the Korean revolution, defended socialism and opened up bright prospects of building a powerful nation.

Kim Jong Il raised it as an important matter affecting the destiny of the country and the revolution to strengthen the People's Army, the hard core of the self-reliant defence force, the pillar and main force for the accomplishment of the Juche revolutionary cause. He gave ceaseless field guidance to the units of the People's Army, and brought about the heyday of the revolutionary armed forces.

He worked hard, inspecting the units, combined arms units and military education establishments of the People's Army and even the small units on the outposts of the front line, in order to strengthen the People's Army and keep it fully ready to fight. He travelled thousands of miles to the eastern sector of the front, to the western sector and then to the central sector, to give field direction to the units of the People's Army, and to visit the officers and men of the three services on the east and west coasts of the country. He also visited the defenders of Cho Island, an isolated defence outpost, by sailing on rough seas, gave them instructions that would serve as the guideline for improving their combat efficiency and took warm care of them.

On November 24, 1996, he paid a visit to the Military Mission of the KPA at Panmunjom where the opposing forces are in sharp confrontation, within hailing distance. He expressed great satisfaction at his men who were on security duty, watching every move of the enemy, with a high sense of responsibility and firm determination to protect the Party and the leader and the benevolent socialist system with their lives. He spoke highly of their devoted service. He inspected the Monument to Kim Il Sung's Autograph, the Panmun House, the Thongil House, the conference hall where the armistice negotiations took place, the hall where the Armistice Agreement was signed, and other places at Panmunjom. He gave the soldiers the task of fighting the enemy without compromise and without mercy, and the task of defending their socialist motherland with arms, with a firm conviction of victory.

On his visits to the units of the People's Army, Kim Jong Il saw the soldiers training, and expressed great satisfaction at the fact that they had been trained to become indefatigable fighters, capable of destroying any invader at a stroke, each being a match for a hundred foes. He set them very important tasks that would serve as guidelines to developing the People's

Army into an unconquerable revolutionary armed force. He looked into every aspect of the soldiers' life, ranging from unit management to combat training, appreciating their simple amateur art performances, tasting their regular food and sometimes sharing their frugal field rations with them. He gave them machine-guns, automatic rifles, field glasses and other presents, exhorting them to protect the Party and the leader, and their socialist country with revolutionary weapons firmly in their hands. He posed with them for souvenir photographs.

During his inspection of the front line, Kim Jong Il spoke highly of the mental alertness of the soldiers and their families who were living with firm confidence in victory and with revolutionary optimism although the country was undergoing harsh trials. He gave prominence to this fact.

On March 4, 1997, seeing dozens of samples of animals and plants and works of fine arts prepared by soldiers during their spare time, Kim Jong Il praised them, saying that the mental and moral state of the People's Army soldiers who were determined to share their lot with the Party was excellent, and that such things could be done only by the soldiers of the Korean People's Army who were firmly resolved to fight for the prosperity and security of the country, and strongly convinced of their victory.

Having seen the First Amateur Art Performance Contest of the Families of the Soldiers of the Korean People's Army in 1998, he said that the mental alertness and fighting stamina of the soldiers' wives, who were ready to share weal and woe, life and death, with their husbands in the same trenches, were excellent. He said that the whole society should follow their example. He saw the Second and Third Amateur Art Performance Contests of Families of Soldiers in 1999 and 2000 respectively, and called the participants women revolutionaries, speaking highly of their performance.

His historic field guidance to the units of the People's Army occasioned a turning-point in the development of the revolutionary armed forces and in safeguarding the socialist country.

The officers and men of the People's Army, who were encouraged by the field guidance of their Supreme Commander Kim Jong Il, prepared themselves to be his closest guards and death-defying corps dedicating their youth and lives to the fight, under the slogan, "Defend the supreme headquarters of the revolution headed by the great Comrade Kim Jong Il at the cost of our lives!" As a result, the spirit of guarding the leader with their

lives, the spirit of acting as human bullets and bombs, and the heroic self-sacrificing spirit have permeated the entire army.

The army-centred leadership given by Kim Jong Il throughout the difficult situation showed the acme of great leadership that has ensured the heyday of the revolutionary armed forces in their determination to crush the imperialists' manoeuvres against the DPRK and defend the socialist motherland.

4. BUILDING UP THE POLITICAL AND IDEOLOGICAL BULWARK

Kim Jong Il regarded the work of building up the political and ideological bulwark of Korean-style socialism as the key to accomplishing the socialist cause of Juche, and has given wise leadership to this work. He said:

"To maintain socialism and lead it to victory, we must intensify ideological work. Only when we have solidly armed the masses of the people with socialist ideology and strengthened the ideological bulwark of socialism can we consolidate and develop socialism and firmly defend it from any storm."

The corruption of socialism begins with ideological corruption, and ideological break-down will lead to the total ruin of socialism.

Strengthening the ideological fortress is all the more necessary, especially because the imperialists are persisting in their ideological and cultural infiltration in an attempt to undermine the socialist system in Korea. For this reason, Kim Jong Il has devoted great efforts to theoretical work for the development of socialist ideology to meet the requirements of the changing situation.

Kim Jong Il published a treatise titled, *Socialism Is a Science,* in *Rodong Sinmun,* organ of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, on November 1, 1994. In this treatise he elucidated the Juche-oriented ideology and theory of socialism, and clearly showed the way to switch over from the socialist movement based on the materialistic concept of history to the socialist movement based on the Juche-oriented viewpoint on man.

The treatise pointed out that although socialism had collapsed in several

countries, socialism as a science was still alive in the minds of the people, and that although it was experiencing temporary yet heartrending turns and twists because of opportunism, socialism would revive and win ultimate victory without a shadow of a doubt because of its scientific character and integrity.

Kim Jong Il scientifically proved that because collectivism is the intrinsic requirement of man, the driving force of the social movement, man's requirement for independence can be realized only through collectivism, and that the replacement of capitalism, which is based on individualism, by socialism, which is based on collectivism, is a law-governed process of socio-historical development.

Since the masses of the people undertake socio-historical development and the building of socialism, he said, the victory of socialism should be achieved by giving priority to the transformation of the people in order to strengthen the motive force of the revolution and enhance their role.

He made it clear that the socialist society in Korea is the best and most vigorous society which greatly enhances man's position and role on the basis of a scientific assessment of his essence.

The people-centred socialism of Korea, he instructed, is the manifestation of the relationship of unity, cooperation, love and trust among comrades in all realms of social life, and, therefore, socialist politics must be, in essence, politics of love for the people, trust in them and benevolence towards them. The Party's benevolent politics, he said, is the most durable and effective method of socialist government that displays invincible vitality.

On June 19, 1995, Kim Jong Il published a work titled, *Giving Priority to Ideological Work Is Essential for Accomplishing Socialism,* and opened the way for a new advance in accomplishing the socialist cause.

The most serious lesson of the collapse of socialism in several countries, he said, is that the corruption of socialism begins with ideological corruption, and that a break-down on the ideological front results in the crumbling of all socialism's fronts and ends in the total ruin of socialism. If it secures the ideological high ground, he said, socialism will triumph; if it loses the ideological high ground, socialism will go to ruin. This is a truth that has been substantiated by history, he declared, and went on to say that when the masses of the people, who are fighting for independence, acquire socialist ideology and believe in socialism without a shadow of a doubt, socialism will inevitably go on to fresh victories.

Kim Jong Il regarded the strengthening of the single-hearted unity of the Party and the revolutionary ranks as an important task for fortifying the ideological bulwark of socialism, and pushed this work forward.

In his talks on February 17, 1997, on March 5 the same year, and on many other occasions, he emphasized revolutionary conscience and revolutionary belief, and encouraged officials and Party members to cherish revolutionary faith and obligations.

After explaining the significance of establishing communist morality in the whole of society, he ensured that sweeping social measures were taken to intensify moral education, especially among the younger generation.

Kim Jong Il has always paid close attention to youth work and encouraged young people to stand in the forefront of socialist construction in all sectors in single-hearted unity behind the Party and the leader.

On the occasion of the 50th anniversary of the founding of the Workers' Party of Korea, in October 1995, he presented a torch to young guards to start a torchlight procession of young students in celebration of the anniversary. On the occasion of the 50th anniversary of the foundation of the League of Socialist Working Youth of Korea in January 1996, he took measures to rename the youth league the Kim Il Sung Socialist Youth League, and awarded the league its flag inscribed with a portrait of Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il published a discourse titled, *Let Us Exalt the Brilliance of Comrade Kim Il Sung's Idea on the Youth Movement and the Achievements Made under His Leadership,* on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of Youth Day, on August 24, 1996.

In this discourse, he said that the youth league should remain eternally the youth league of Kim Il Sung, that the youth movement in Korea should develop along the road Kim Il Sung indicated for the Juche-oriented youth movement, and that this is the way to champion and exalt his idea and theory of the youth movement and the achievements of this movement made under his leadership. Kim Jong Il put forward the slogan, "Love young people!" and made sure that the entire Party, the whole country and the whole society paid greater attention to youth work. He emphasized that all young Korean people must hold high their honour and display their revolutionary mettle by brilliantly carrying out their mission and duty as the successors to the revolution in the struggle to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche in loyal support of the Party's leadership.

Kim Jong Il also encouraged the whole society to implement the idea of unity between the soldiers and the people to strengthen single-hearted unity.

5. ELECTED TO THE TOP OF THE PARTY AND STATE HIERARCHIES

After the 100th-day memorial service following the death of Kim Il Sung, the Korean people were eager to have Kim Jong Il at the top of the Party and state hierarchies, and start a new historic advance. The whole world focused its attention on the event that would take place very soon. This expectation was prompted by the experience of many instances of political confusion after the death of the head of state in a country and frequent cases of a new leader making amendments to the policy of his or her predecessor or changing it completely.

Every day people sent tens of thousands of letters to the Party Central Committee, letters requesting to have Kim Jong Il at the helm of the Party and the state.

Kim Jong Il, however, declined their request, although he had complied with all their other requests. He was immersed in implementing the behests of the late President.

Whenever he was reminded by officials that the election of the new leadership should not be delayed any longer, he would say that there was no need to hurry it. He explained that it would be immoral for him, a man of the President, to have the new leadership of the Party and the state elected and cheer while the people, who had wailed by the deceased, were still grief-stricken.

The Korean people's desire to acclaim Kim Jong Il as the General Secretary of the Workers' Party of Korea was realized after the memorial service was held on the occasion of the third anniversary of Kim Il Sung's death.

During September and the first week of October 1997, prior to the 52nd anniversary of the founding of the Party, the conferences of the Korean People's Army organization, and the provincial and equivalent organizations of the Workers' Party of Korea unanimously adopted resolutions acclaiming Kim Jong Il as the General Secretary of the Party.

On the basis of these resolutions, the Central Committee and the Central Military Commission of the Workers' Party of Korea announced on October

8, 1997, in a special report, that Kim Jong Il had been acclaimed as the General Secretary of the Workers' Party of Korea.

On September 5, 1998, the First Session of the Tenth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK elected Kim Jong Il Chairman of the National Defence Commission of the DPRK.

After the President's death, it was generally believed that Kim Jong Il would be elected President of the DPRK. Kim Jong Il reiterated, however, his decision to regard Kim Il Sung as the eternal President of the Republic, and emphasized the need to champion and carry forward the President's ideas and achievements.

The Kim Il Sung Socialist Constitution, which was adopted by the First Session of the Tenth Supreme People's Assembly, stipulates that Kim Il Sung is the eternal President of the Republic. The meeting also elected Kim Jong Il Chairman of the National Defence Commission, the pivot of the state system of the Republic in the new Constitution.

The Korean people expressed enthusiastic support and welcome for Kim Jong Il standing at the helm of the Party and the state.

In this atmosphere, the Korean people greeted the 50th anniversary of the establishment of the Republic on September 9, 1998. The anniversary functions demonstrated the Korean people's unbreakable determination to safeguard and consummate socialism, and build a powerful nation in accordance with the Juche idea under Kim Jong Il's supreme leadership.

Kim Jong Il's assumption of supreme leadership of the Party and state has provided the decisive guarantee for perpetuating Kim Il Sung's ideas and leadership and accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche.

6. TOWARDS THE CONSTRUCTION OF A POWERFUL NATION

IN COMMAND OF THE "ARDUOUS MARCH" AND FORCED MARCH

After Kim Il Sung's death, the Korean people were beset with many difficulties and hardships in building socialism.

The imperialists, clamouring about the "vacancy of Head of State" in the

DPRK, watched for signs of internal "change", increasing their political and diplomatic pressure and military threats against the DPRK while resorting to economic blockade.

The abolition of the socialist market in those days compelled Korea to depend on the capitalist market for raw materials and equipment needed for the construction of socialism. Obtaining these and other necessities from the capitalist market in the circumstances of the economic blockade was extremely difficult. To make matters worse, the food shortage that had been caused by natural calamities during several years obliged the Koreans to make an indescribably "Arduous March[38]" from the mid-1990s.

In the grim and trying circumstances in which the whole country was on the "Arduous March", Kim Jong Il led the masses, by believing in their fortitude, to ride out all difficulties.

For the purpose of setting the people on their mettle in the grim trial, Kim Jong Il sent senior officials of the Party and the state in the autumn of 1994 on visits to Maengsan County in South Phyongan Province, the Kwangchon Foodstuffs Factory in Tanchon City and other places which were setting examples in managing their economies in the spirit of self-reliance, so that these officials could encourage the local people by speaking highly of their success in their work.

In view of the intensifying imperialist manoeuvres to stifle socialism, he raised the slogan of living and fighting in the spirit of the Arduous March, and led all the people to break through the difficulties in their way with courage.

In his talks to the senior officials of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea on October 14, 1996, titled, *Officials Must Live and Work in the Spirit of the Arduous March* and on many other occasions, he instructed that the officials must display on a higher plane the spirit of the Arduous March and revolutionary optimism to break through the difficulties facing them and make a fresh upsurge in building socialism.

His slogan of living and fighting in the spirit of the Arduous March implied his profound intention to encourage all the Party members and other working people to break through the difficulties and obstacles and bring about a fresh upsurge in all sectors of the revolution and construction by emulating the spirit of guarding the leader with their lives, the spirit of self-reliance, the spirit of riding out difficulties, and revolutionary optimism

displayed by the anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners during the Arduous March.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on January 14, 1996, Kim Jong Il elucidated the revolutionary outlook on life by his aphorism, "Live not merely for today but for tomorrow," and inspired the people to work by taking the aphorism as their slogan.

He instructed that officials should learn the revolutionary spirit of the soldiers and become standard-bearers in a charge and buglers signalling an advance, and plunge into hard and difficult work ahead of others, shouting, "Follow me!" instead of giving the command, "Charge!" He also made sure that they roused the masses to revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activity through political work.

Kim Jong Il made a breakthrough in building a powerful nation while giving field guidance to various sectors of the national economy. He paid close attention to work in Jagang Province in order to revitalize the national economy as a whole while building up the military groundwork for creating a powerful nation under his army-centred revolutionary leadership. The people of Jagang Province were the first to raise the torch of innovation during the "Arduous March" in spite of having the most unfavourable natural and climatic conditions in Korea.

Kim Jong Il decided to lead the "Arduous March" and forced march to success by revitalizing Jagang Province and inspiring the people with the example of the province.

As a result, the province set an example in improving its economy by its own efforts.

Kim Jong Il gave field guidance to the work of different sectors in Jagang Province from January 16 to 21, 1998, on June 1, and on October 20 and 22 the same year, speaking highly of the spirit of self-reliance displayed by the local people. He highly praised the workers in the province who had built small and medium-sized power stations in many places and spruced up their factories, enterprises, towns and villages, requesting more work to do and saying that they would rather starve to death without leaving their machines than ask for food and foreign currency in spite of the unendurable food shortage. He emphasized that these people had shown by their practical example how to support the Party in that difficult situation.

Expressing his conviction that it would be possible to revitalize the

national economy and improve the people's standard of living if the work attitude of the people of the province was emulated, Kim Jong Il termed the spirit of the province's people the "Kanggye spirit", and roused the whole country to follow their example.

The Kanggye spirit has been emulated by the whole country as the Korean spirit of our times and as the motive force of a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

TOWARDS A SECOND GRAND CHOLLIMA ADVANCE

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership, all efforts were concentrated on solving problems in the construction of the socialist economy to improve the country's overall economic situation.

He paid close attention to the metal and machine industries and other major industrial sectors, and led them to put production on a steady basis.

In order to induce the workers of the key industries to take the lead in emulating the Kanggye spirit and improving the economic situation, Kim Jong Il gave field guidance to the Songjin Steel Complex on March 9, 1998. He called on the workers of the steel works to advance in the spirit of Chollima and stand in the forefront of the campaign to effect a fresh Chollima upsurge throughout the country. As a result, the torch kindled by the Songjin Steel Complex flared all over the country, following the Kanggye spirit, to start a fresh Chollima advance.

During his field guidance of different sectors in North Hamgyong Province in November 1998, he gave the metallurgical workers the task of effecting steady iron and steel production by following the torch of the Songjin Steel Complex.

In the ensuing years, too, Kim Jong Il gave on-the-spot guidance to the Amnokgang Tyre Factory, the Sungri General Motor Works and many other factories, assigning major industrial sectors the task of carrying on production as they should as well as the method of carrying out the task. He worked hard to direct this work.

He ensured that all efforts were concentrated on the solution of the problem of electric power that was in short supply. He induced the state to devote its efforts to the construction of large-scale hydro-electric power stations and encouraged the people to construct small and medium-sized

power stations everywhere possible in a mass campaign. These efforts resulted in the construction of the Anbyon Youth Power Station, Thaechon Power Station and other large-scale hydro-electric power stations, and a large number of small and medium-sized power stations.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to laying the foundation on which to find a satisfactory solution to the problem of food.

On a field-guidance trip to Taehongdan County, Ryanggang Province, on October 1, 1998, he took steps to effect a revolution in potato farming, for a great advance in the solution of the food problem. This led the whole country to start a powerful movement to bring about a revolutionary advance in potato farming in the spirit and with the mettle of Taehongdan.

In his talk to senior officials of the Party Central Committee on March 26, 1997, he told them to push ahead with the work of implementing Kim Il Sung's instructions on raising grass-eating farm animals on a large scale.

After inspecting the fish farm of the Ryongjong Division of the Ryongyon County General Farm on June 30, 1997, he gave the officials concerned the task of developing fish farming in order to supply the people with more fish.

In support of his ideas, the agricultural working people prepared pastures mainly on the basis of grassland and developed grass-eating livestock farming on a large scale to increase the number of their farm animals. They also arranged fish farms everywhere possible and increased fish farming. Their efforts resulted in great success in the solution of the food problem.

Kim Jong Il also took measures to speed up land rezoning in Kangwon Province to make it an example to be followed by North Phyongan Province, South Hwanghae Province and the rest of the country. He directed the project in the field.

In the difficult circumstances of the "Arduous March," he encouraged the entire army and all the people to turn out for land management and bring about a sweeping change in the country's land development.

In his work, *On Effecting a New Change in Land Management,* dated August 11, 1996, Kim Jong Il set the task of improving land management, and showed the way to carry it out. He encouraged all the Korean people to take part in this work as one man. He paid close attention to the work of developing the Ryongmun Cavern, Mt. Kuwol, Mt. Jongbang, Mt. Chilbo

and other scenic spots into recreation grounds, and gave field guidance for this work on many occasions.

He led the whole country to establish an ambience of giving weight to science and technology and strengthen the foundations of science and technology to meet the requirements of the developing situation. On April 28, 1995, and on many other occasions, he gave on-the-spot guidance to the State Academy of Sciences. He opened the prospect of developing science and technology in Korea to the highest level in the near future. While inspecting the programs presented to the national program contest and exhibition on February 8, 1998, he instructed that the computer industry should be promoted and that many computer programs needed badly in Korea should be developed.

Under his leadership, the Korean scientists and technicians succeeded in launching the country's first man-made earth satellite by their own efforts and technology on August 31, 1998. Many successes were achieved also in other branches of science and technology.

Kim Jong Il mobilized all the people for a second grand Chollima advance to make revolutionary progress in building a powerful nation. In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on January 1, 1999, titled, *Let Us Brighten This Year as the Year of a Great Advance in Building a Powerful Nation,* he defined 1999 as a year of general advance for building a powerful nation, and roused the Korean people to a second grand Chollima advance.

In 1999 alone, he gave on-the-spot guidance to many sectors ranging from the Academy of Sciences on January 11, to the United Thaechon Hydro-electric Power Station, the land-rezoning project in Kangwon Province, the newly constructed Kwangmyongsong Salt Works and an expanded foodstuffs factory.

The Korean people held the conference of the front rankers of the second grand Chollima advance to speed up this advance, the national conference of the activists in the agricultural sector, the national conference of scientists and technicians, the national conference of exemplary junior workers of the Kim Il Sung Socialist Youth League, and other national conferences. They successfully carried out the "Arduous March" and forced march, and made great strides in building a powerful nation.

In the difficult situation in which everything was in short supply, and

every single penny had to be spent most sparingly, the people bolstered the national economy step by step under Kim Jong Il's leadership. During the harsh trial, they not merely withstood the "Arduous March" and forced march with patience, but laid a solid foundation on which to build a powerful nation under Kim Jong Il's leadership.

7. THE HISTORIC PYONGYANG MEETING

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the work of reunifying the country under the banner of the three charters for national reunification which had been elucidated by Kim Il Sung.

Kim Il Sung was most concerned about the reunification of the divided country and made every effort to achieve it until the last moment of his life.

On August 4, 1997, Kim Jong Il published a work titled, *Let Us Carry Out the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung's Instructions for National Reunification,* in which he defined the three charters for national reunification and showed the principled standpoint and the method of putting the charters into effect. He said:

"The three principles of national reunification, the ten-point programme of the great unity of the whole nation and the plan for establishing the DFRK constitute the three charters for national reunification by which Comrade Kim Il Sung elaborated the basic principles and methods of national reunification into an integral system on the basis of his great Juche idea and his valuable experience of the struggle to reunify the country."

In this work, Kim Jong Il explained the principled standpoint of the Workers' Party of Korea for reunifying the country on the basis of the three charters.

He said that Korea must be reunified on the principle of national independence. National reunification is an affair of the Korean people themselves. Since it is the question of their right to independence, the Korean people must reunify their country on their own responsibility and by their own efforts, and in accordance with their own will to meet their requirements.

Kim Jong Il made it clear that reunifying the country peacefully, without recourse to arms, is an invariable policy of the Workers' Party of

Korea. It is impossible to impose ideology and system upon the people by force; the difference in ideologies and systems between the north and the south cannot be eliminated by a coercive method. Conflict between the north and the south would only bring disaster to the Korean nation; it would give an opportunity to the imperialists to fish in troubled waters. Whoever loves the nation and cherishes peace must make every effort to reunify the country by peaceful means.

The smoothest and most rational way to reunify the country, he declared, is to reunify it on the basis of a federation.

The Korean people desire to reunify their country as soon as possible by a rational method acceptable to everyone. An attempt to reunify the country on the basis of the system of one side today after more than half a century since the establishment of different systems in the north and the south would widen the gulf of division and bring an irretrievable disaster to the nation, much less reunification.

In the light of the present situation and the urgent desire of the Korean people, the best way of reunification is to establish a reunified national state by a federation based on one nation, one state, two systems and two governments.

Kim Jong Il clearly indicated the way to improve north-south relations and open a turning-point phase in reunifying the country. He emphasized that in the first place the south Korean authorities must not depend on foreign forces and "cooperate" with them, but take the road of uniting the efforts of the same nation against foreign forces from the point of view of national independence. He declared that the political and military confrontation between north and south should be eliminated, and that socio-political life in south Korea should be democratized.

Kim Jong Il sent a letter, titled, *Let Us Reunify the Country Independently and Peacefully through the Great Unity of the Entire Nation,* to the national symposium held on April 18, 1998, in commemoration of the 50th anniversary of the joint conference of the representatives of political parties and public organizations in north and south Korea. In this letter he proposed the five-point policy for great national unity.

The gist of the five-point policy is that the entire nation must unite on the principle of independence of the nation under the banner of patriotism, and under the banner of national reunification, that north-south relations

must be improved, that domination by foreign forces and their interference must be opposed, and that the Koreans in the north, the south and abroad must strengthen their solidarity and alliance.

Kim Jong Il put great efforts into realizing the great unity of the nation on the basis of the three charters for national reunification and the five-point policy for the great unity of the nation. He met the Rev. Mun Ik Hwan's wife Pak Yong Gil, Mun Myong Ja, a Korean woman journalist in the United States and a member of the White House press corps, Jong Ju Yong, Honorary Chairman of the Hyundai Group in south Korea, and other persons from south Korea who had come to visit Pyongyang as visits, contacts, cooperation and exchanges had become activated. He encouraged the people who have a national conscience and a desire for reunification to turn out for reunification hand in hand with one another, regardless of their political views, religious beliefs and past records.

In step with the nation's mounting desire for reunification, the Koreans in the north, the south and abroad developed the struggle to reunify the country into a nationwide movement.

In response to the appeal of the joint conference of the political parties and other organizations of the DPRK on January 19, 1995, to hold a spectacular festival for national reunification on the occasion of the 50th anniversary of the liberation of the country, the festival was held in a grand manner on August 15 that year. The festival was participated in by not only delegates from the north and abroad, but those from the South Korean Federation of University Student Councils under the South Headquarters of the National Alliance of Youth and Students for the Country's Reunification, and members of the Supporters' Association of the Family Movement for Realizing Democracy. In addition, North-South Workers' Football Matches for Reunification were held in Pyongyang and Seoul during March and April 1999, and the 10th Pan-National Rally was held in August the same year. These events added to the heated activities for national reunification.

In step with this trend, Kim Dae Jung, who is at the top of the hierarchy of the south Korean regime, officially expressed his wish to visit Pyongyang. On April 8, 2000, a north-south agreement was adopted on the plan for his visit to Pyongyang and a north-south summit. After a number of preliminary contacts, the highest leaders of the north and the south met in

Pyongyang from June 13 to 15, 2000, which was a historic event.

Kim Jong Il met the south Korean delegation at the airport with compatriotic hospitality and held several interviews and talks with them. The talks resulted in the adoption and publication of a north-south joint declaration on June 15. The declaration stipulated the agreements on finding a solution to the problem of the country's reunification independently by the united efforts of the Korean nation, the masters, on promoting reunification in the direction of the recognized community between the north side's proposal for federation and the south side's proposal for confederation, on finding early solutions to the problems of exchanging visiting delegations of scattered families and relatives and of returning the steadfast long-term prisoners to the north and other humanitarian problems, on deepening mutual trust through the balanced development of the nation's economy by means of economic cooperation, and through the advancement of cooperation and exchanges in social and cultural fields, including sports, public health and the environment, and various other sectors, and on both sides starting dialogue between the authorities concerned as soon as possible for the purpose of early implementation of the above-mentioned agreements.

Since the historic north-south summit in Pyongyang, delegations of scattered families and relatives in north and south have paid visits to Pyongyang and Seoul, and held emotional reunions with their kith and kin, 63 steadfast long-term prisoners have come to the DPRK, and dialogue and contacts between the north and the south have taken place unprecedentedly in many fields, along with a series of practical measures.

The Pyongyang meeting and north-south summit on the threshold of the second millennium marked a historic turning point in the Korean people's efforts to hasten reunification.

8. WIDENING OF EXTERNAL RELATIONS

Kim Jong Il has enhanced the prestige of the DPRK, and increased its influence as never before by intensifying his external activities, consistently adhering to the ideas of independence, peace and friendship.

He has put great efforts into consolidating and developing the traditional

Korea-China friendship, which had been struck up in the arduous revolutionary struggle. He paid an unofficial visit to the People's Republic of China from May 29 to 31, 2000.

Highly appreciating General Secretary Kim Jong Il's visit to China at the historic turn of the century, General Secretary Jiang Zemin emphasized the great significance of the visit in promoting mutual understanding, trust, friendship and cooperation between the two parties and two countries, and in giving an impetus to the development of Korea-China friendship in the new century.

Kim Jong Il's visit to China marked a new chapter in strengthening unity and solidarity between the parties and peoples of the two countries.

Kim Jong Il has also devoted great efforts to developing the relations of friendship and cooperation with Russia, a neighbour of Korea. He had sincere talks with Vladimir Putin, President of the Russian Federation, who was on a visit to Korea from July 19 to 20, 2000.

The talks resulted in the adoption and publication of a Korea-Russia joint declaration. The joint declaration clearly and fully expressed the common standpoint on the matter of strengthening the traditional friendship and good-neighbourly relations, mutual trust, and many-sided cooperation between the two countries, on the matters of opposing all policies of aggression and war, making strenuous efforts to effect disarmament and ensure world security, and striving against interference in the affairs of other countries in the name of "humanitarian intervention," and on other questions of common concern.

President Putin's visit to Korea was an important event of great significance in the new development of Korea-Russia relations.

Kim Jong Il resolved the stiff and long-standing hostile relationship between the DPRK and the USA and opened a turning-point phase in improving the relations between the two countries.

The DPRK-USA talks which resumed in Geneva, Switzerland, from August to October 1994 adopted the Agreed Framework. The Agreed Framework stipulates that both sides will cooperate to replace the DPRK's graphite-moderated reactors and related facilities with light-water power plants, that the two sides will move toward full normalization of political and economic relations, and that both sides will work together for peace and security on a nuclear-free Korean peninsula.

The Agreed Framework also stipulates that the US will undertake to make arrangements for the provision to the DPRK of an LWR project with a total generating capacity of approximately 2,000 MW(e) by 2003, that the DPRK will freeze its graphite-moderated reactors and related facilities, that the United States will offset the energy forgone due to the freeze of the DPRK's graphite-moderated reactors and related facilities through the delivery of heavy oil at a rate of 500,000 tons annually, that both sides will reduce barriers to trade and investment and that the US will provide formal assurances to the DPRK against the threat or use of nuclear weapons by the United States.

In this connection, US President Clinton sent a letter of assurance to Kim Jong Il, on October 20, 1994. He promised in his letter that he would use the full powers of his office to facilitate the arrangements for the financing and construction of an LWR project within the DPRK, and the funding and implementation of interim energy alternatives for the DPRK pending completion of the first reactor unit of the LWR project.

Kim Jong Il dispatched a special envoy to the United States on a trip from October 9 to 12, 2000, to convey a letter and greetings to President Clinton in connection with the DPRK-USA relationship.

On October 12 the same year, a joint communique was published, announcing commitments to establishing a new relationship free from past hostility, to effecting economic cooperation and exchanges, and to improving relations on the question of missiles and in other fields.

Later, Kim Jong Il met US Secretary of State Madeline Albright, who was on a visit to Korea to convey her President's aspiration to improve the DPRK-USA relationship. He exchanged with her in earnest a wide range of opinions about matters of common concern.

Kim Jong Il's energetic external activities evoked a strong response at home and abroad, and brought about a new change in the development of relations with other countries. As a result, many countries in Western Europe, such as Italy, Great Britain, the Netherlands, Spain and Germany, as well as New Zealand, established diplomatic relations with the DPRK, and Australia resumed diplomatic relations with the DPRK.

This greatly inspired the Korean people who had succeeded in completing the "Arduous March" and forced march, and turned out to build a powerful nation.

9. GRAND FESTIVAL OF VICTORIOUS SOCIALIST PEOPLE

The Korean people, who were safeguarding socialism and building a powerful, Juche-oriented nation under Kim Jong Il's leadership, greeted the 55th anniversary of the founding of the Workers' Party of Korea in 2000.

Kim Jong Il wisely directed preparations for celebrating the anniversary in a grand manner. The grand celebration of the anniversary at the turn of the century was of great significance for the Korean people.

After the death of Kim Il Sung, the Korean people made the "Arduous March" and forced march with success, overcoming food shortages and untold hardships due to natural calamities, in the circumstances of ceaseless political and military pressure and economic blockade by imperialist forces.

The 55th anniversary of the Party served as an important opportunity to inspire the people, who had just completed an arduous struggle, with the pride of victors and rouse them to the construction of a powerful socialist nation.

A joint editorial carried by the official newspapers of the Party, the Army and the Youth League, published on New Year's Day 2000, raised the slogan "Let us brighten this year that marks the WPK's 55th anniversary with signal victory in the ardor of a great Chollima upsurge." Kim Jong Il emphasized that that was the basic slogan under which the entire Party, the entire army and all the people should advance that year.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the slogans adopted by the Party Central Committee on July 31, 2000, anticipating the 55th anniversary of the Party, were given wide publicity through the media, and that the Party organizations and the working people's organizations at all levels accepted and discussed the slogans with great enthusiasm in order to put them into practice.

Kim Jong Il regarded carrying forward and developing the revolutionary traditions as an important way to strengthen the single-hearted unity of the Party and the revolutionary ranks, and ensured that the education of the people in the revolutionary traditions was intensified as never before. For this purpose, he inspected the old revolutionary battle

sites in Ryanggang Province for many days towards the end of March 2000, gave instructions to preserve and manage the historical sites and remains at the revolutionary battlefields with care, and intensify education in the revolutionary traditions through them, and took necessary measures for the purpose. He planned to improve the layout of the revolutionary battle sites and historical sites in the province, and roused the entire Party, the entire army and all the people to carry out the plan.

Kim Jong Il encouraged the people to effect a fresh upsurge in all fields of socialist construction, looking forward to the 55th anniversary of the founding of the Party. He paid a visit to the Ragwon Machine Factory on January 27, 2000, learned about production at the factory, and instructed that the workers of the factory should kindle the torch of a fresh upsurge in the spirit of the ten Party members who had given pleasure to Kim Il Sung in the years of the Fatherland Liberation War and postwar reconstruction. Thereupon, the torch which flared at Ragwon spread all over the country.

Kim Jong Il kept himself informed of the production activities at the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory, Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory and other major industrial establishments, indicated the distinct direction and method of putting production on a steady basis, improving the quality of their products and modernizing their equipment, and took necessary measures. Inspired by these measures, the workers of the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory carried out their monthly production quotas without fail, and raised the quality of their products to a high level. The Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory, meanwhile, carried out its task of electric engine production and repair ahead of schedule. Kim Jong Il gave energetic guidance to many sectors in order to provide the people with stabilized lives and cultured living conditions. From the beginning of 2000, he inspected the land-rezoning sites in North Phyongan Province, the Taehongdan County General Farm and the Phothae General Farm in Ryanggang Province, and other farm villages, and poultry farms and catfish farms constructed by the soldiers of the People's Army. He proposed the construction of a waterway from Kaechon to Lake Thaesong and encouraged the entire army and all the people to turn out for the project. He also gave on-the-spot guidance to the Nyongbyon Silk Mill and Pakchon Silk Mill, setting tasks for them to increase the production of silk cloth for the people, and took all the necessary measures.

In 1998, Kim Jong Il proposed constructing a motorway between Pyongyang and Nampho by the 55th anniversary of the Party, and assigned young people to the project. In the most difficult circumstances in which everything was in short supply, the young people finished the construction of the motorway by the set time by cutting out bedrock with chisels and hammers and carrying large loads of earth and gravel on their backs.

Kim Jong Il highly appreciated the heroic efforts of the young people who had built an excellent motorway in a most difficult situation, named the motorway Youth Hero Motorway, and made sure that a monument was erected to the young people's heroism.

He wisely led the people to celebrate the 55th anniversary of the Party with success. He directed the production of *The Ever-Victorious Workers' Party of Korea,* a grand mass gymnastic and artistic performance, in such a way that it emerged as a masterpiece that profoundly described the history of the Party which had triumphed over all difficulties with the might of single-hearted unity. In addition, he ensured that a night gathering, torchlight procession and all the other celebration functions became a grand festival of the victors who had completed the "Arduous March" with success and made a breakthrough in building a powerful nation.

Under his leadership, the parade, mass demonstration, grand mass gymnastic and artistic performance, the night gathering and torchlight procession of young students and all the other celebration functions were held in a glorious manner.

The 55th anniversary of the founding of the Party encouraged the Korean people to start their advance proudly in the 21st century for the construction of a powerful nation, with the pride of having successfully completed the "Arduous March" and forced march in spite of many heart-rending trials and twists and turns.

NOTES

1. The ten Party members in Ragwon–the members of the Party cell at the foundry of the Ragwon Machinery Plant (the present Ragwon Machine Complex) which, through its increased wartime production, rendered great contributions to victory in the Fatherland Liberation War. One day in late June 1952 Kim Il Sung attended a meeting of this Party cell, and discussed with its members the preparations for postwar reconstruction. During the discussion, a woman Party member told him not to worry too much about postwar reconstruction, saying that they could certainly manage it and live better as they had already rehabilitated within a few years what the Japanese imperialists had wantonly destroyed. In her simple, confident words, Kim Il Sung read the iron will of the Korean working class, and said that she was quite right. From her words, he drew a firm conviction that the Workers' Party of Korea would surely be victorious, as it was supported by this iron-willed working class. Later, when he recollected those days, he said, "I will never forget what she said as long as I live!" p. 5

2. *The Embrace of My Motherland*

Moran Hill is afire with a red glow,
The Taedong is arched with a rainbow.
How beautiful this motherland
In whose embrace I've grown up!

Azaleas smile sweetly in spring,
Larks warble high up on the wing.
As warm and tender as the vernal sun
Is the land that has brought me up.

The sun rises on the sea buoyant,
The land glows under the sun radiant,
Stars twinkle with nocturnal grace,
In my father the General's embrace. p. 6

3. Song of Best Wishes

Father General, you have brought spring
And given light to the dark land of Korea.
When gunpowder smoke hangs over the far-off horizon,
The people pray for your safety.

Father General, you are the leader of the people
Bearing the destiny of the country on your shoulders.
Your safety on the journey to the front
Means happiness to all families in this country.

Father General, you will build a paradise
In our land of heroes who have crushed the Yanks.
The people pray for your safety
For a brilliant future of Korea. p. 7

4. Ma Tong Hui–a commanding officer of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army. He reconnoitered Pochonbo, ensuring success in the historic Pochonbo Battle. In November 1937 when, in the course of action to carry out his mission in the homeland, he was arrested by the Japanese police, he bit off his tongue to keep the secret of the Headquarters.

He was killed by the Japanese police on January 9, 1938. p. 10

5. Ri Su Bok and Pak Won Jin–soldiers of the Korean People's Army who blocked enemy pillboxes with their bodies, and ensured the advance of their respective units during the Fatherland Liberation War. p. 15

6. The Chollima workteam movement–a further development of the Chollima Movement. The participants in this movement worked to develop their respective workteams into communist units where the members would work, study and live, helping and leading each other under the slogan "One for all and all for one." In particular, they set education in communist ideals as their first task, and educated laggards and transformed them into activists, at the same time turning passive elements into positive ones. This movement has not only become a mass innovation movement for increased production, it has become a process of mass education to transform the people along communist lines. p. 38

7. The *Pueblo* incident–the capture by the Korean People's Army, in a self-defence operation, on January 23, 1968, of the US armed spy ship *Pueblo.* The enemy ship had been engaging in espionage and hostile acts in the DPRK's territorial waters, attempting to ignite another war in Korea and creating a hair-trigger situation.

The DPRK deported the crew of the *Pueblo* from its territory through Panmunjom on December 23, 1968, only after extracting a letter of apology from the US government.

The ship is now anchored in the Taedong River, where the public can visit it. p. 41

8. *EC-121* incident–the shooting-down by Air Force planes of the Korean People's Army

on April 15, 1969, of the US electronic reconnaissance plane *EC-121*, which had been engaging in aerial reconnaissance in the air space of the northern half of Korea, and the follow-up touch-and-go situation in Korea inflamed by the US side. p. 41

9. Kim Il–an anti-Japanese veteran revolutionary and a military and political cadre of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army. His original name was Pak Tok San. After the liberation of Korea, he took key positions in the Party, the state and the army. He served as the Premier of the Administration Council from December 1972 and as the First Vice-President of the DPRK from April 1976. He died on March 9, 1984. p. 57

10. O Jin U–an anti-Japanese veteran revolutionary. He served as the Chief of the General Staff of the Korean People's Army and as the Minister of the People's Armed Forces, and later as the Director of the General Political Department of the KPA concurrently. On April 20, 1992, he was awarded the title of marshal of the KPA for his great contributions to the strengthening of the armed forces. He died on February 25, 1995. p. 57

11. Rim Chun Chu–an anti-Japanese veteran revolutionary. He conducted anti-Japanese united-front work before dealing with Party work in the Korean People's Revolutionary Army. After Korea's liberation, he held important posts in the Party and the state.

From April 1983, he served as the Vice-President of the DPRK before dying on April 27, 1988. p. 57

12. "1,000-*ri* Journey for Learning"–a journey of 400 kilometres undertaken by Kim Il Sung from Badaogou, Changbai County, China, on March 16, 1923 to Mangyongdae, his birthplace in Pyongyang on March 29 the same year, at the tender age of 11. This journey was undertaken in response to his father's instruction that one must know Korea well if one was to carry out the Korean revolution. p. 75

13. "1,000-*ri* Journey for National Liberation"–a journey undertaken by Kim Il Sung from Mangyongdae, his native home, on January 22, 1925, to Badaogou, Changbai County, China. He covered over 400 kilometres, with the firm determination that he would not return home until Korea was liberated. p. 75

14. Kim Hyok–a young communist who, together with Kim Il Sung, pioneered the Korean revolution. He also worked as editor-in-chief of *Bolshevik.*

He composed and disseminated many revolutionary songs and poems, including his first song, *Star of Korea,* in praise of Kim Il Sung. He fell in action on August 25, 1930. p. 77

15. O Jung Hup–a commander of the Seventh Regiment of the KPRA during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. During the Arduous March (December 1938-March 1939), he

disguised his regiment as the Headquarters to lure the Japanese troops onto a false trail, thus ensuring the safety of the real Headquarters. He fell in action on December 17, 1939. p. 77

16. The July 4 North-South Joint Statement–a joint statement which was published on July 4, 1972, as agreed at the north-south high-level talks, and the keynote of which was the three principles for national reunification advanced by Kim Il Sung. p. 92

17. Cha Kwang Su–one of the young communists in the early days of the revolutionary struggle led by Kim Il Sung. He was one of the founders and commanding officers of the KPRA.

In the autumn of 1930, he, together with other revolutionary comrades and the people, renamed the leader of the Korean revolution after the sun, calling him Kim Il Sung (the original name was Kim Song Ju), out of their wish for Kim Il Sung to become the sun of Korea. He fell in action on October 30, 1932. p. 97

18. The Taean work system–a Juche-oriented economic management system established by Kim Il Sung following his on-the-spot guidance at the Taean Electric Appliance Factory (the present Taean Heavy Machine Complex) in December 1961.

It is a system by which all factories and enterprises are managed under the collective leadership of the respective Party committees, the economic tasks in hand are carried out by giving priority to political work and mobilizing the producer masses for the purpose, the higher echelons render responsible assistance to their subordinate units, and the economy is managed in a scientific and rational way. p. 109

19. Choe Hyon–an anti-Japanese veteran revolutionary. His original name was Choe Tuk Gwon. He was a competent commanding officer from the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle. During the period of the Fatherland Liberation War (June 25, 1950-July 27, 1953) he fought as a division commander, and later as a corps commander, of the Korean People's Army. Following the war, he was promoted to Minister of the People's Armed Forces and then to Vice-Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission. He died on April 9, 1982. p. 126

20. Ho Tam–a veteran politician in the field of foreign affairs. He worked as Vice-Premier-Cum-Foreign Minister before taking successively the positions of Secretary of the Party Central Committee, Chairman of the Foreign Affairs Committee of the Supreme People's Assembly and Chairman of the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of the Fatherland. He died on May 11, 1991. p. 127

21. Sim Chang Wan–a politician who rendered distinguished services for strengthening the Party and the armed forces. He died on May 28, 1981, at his post as the Director of the

Political Department of the Ministry of Public Security (the present Ministry of People's Security). p. 128

22. Kim Chaek–a commander of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. After Korea's liberation, he served as Vice-Premier-Cum-Minister of Industry of the DPRK Cabinet. During the Fatherland Liberation War he was a member of the Military Commission and Commander of the Front. He died on January 31, 1951. p. 128

23. An Kil–the chief of staff of the Third Directional Force of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. After Korea's liberation, as a commanding officer, he rendered distinguished services in developing the KPRA into the Korean People's Army, the regular armed forces. He died on December 13, 1947. p. 128

24. Kang Kon–a political commissar of a KPRA regiment and a detachment unit during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. After Korea's liberation, he served as Vice-Minister of National Defence and the Chief of the General Staff of the KPA concurrently. During the Fatherland Liberation War he served as the Chief of Staff of the Front Headquarters before falling in action on September 8, 1950. p. 128

25. Ryu Kyong Su–an anti-Japanese veteran revolutionary. His original name was Ryu Sam Son. After Korea's liberation, he worked as the commander of the first tank unit. During the Fatherland Liberation War, he distinguished himself as the commander of a tank division and as the commander of the tank corps. After the war, he served as a commander of the army. He died on November 19, 1958. p. 128

26. Jo Jong Chol–a political commissar of a regiment of the KPRA during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. After Korea's liberation, he made great contributions to the building of the army. During the Fatherland Liberation War, he served as a political commissar of the South-Sea Brigade of the KPA. He fell in action on October 4, 1950. p. 128

27. Kim Kyong Sok–an anti-Japanese veteran revolutionary who conducted political and publication work for the KPRA during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. After Korea's liberation, he contributed to building up the army. After the Fatherland Liberation War, he served as the Chairman of the Pyongyang City Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea. He died on September 8, 1962. p. 128

28. Choe Chun Guk–the commander of an independent regiment and political commissar of an independent brigade of the KPRA during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. After Korea's liberation, he made positive contributions to building up the army. During the Fatherland Liberation War, he served as a division commander. He fell in action on July 30, 1950. p. 128

29. Ryang Se Bong–a participant in the anti-Japanese struggle from 1920 and, from 1930, the general commander of the Independence Army under *Kukmin-bu,* a united body of Korean nationalists formed in Northeast China in 1929. From the summer of 1932, when he met Kim Il Sung, he collaborated with the KPRA, switching from anti-communism to alliance with communism. He was trapped and killed by the Japanese imperialists in September 1934. p. 130

30. Jong Jun Thaek–a statesman who took charge of economic affairs in Korea after its liberation. He served as the first Chairman of the State Planning Commission and, after the Fatherland Liberation War, as a Vice-Premier of the Cabinet and of the subsequent Administration Council. He died on January 11, 1973. p. 130

31. Kang Yong Chang–an official who contributed greatly to the development of the metal industry in Korea after its liberation. He served as chief engineer of the Songjin Steel Plant, as Minister of the Metal Industry and as President of the Academy of Sciences, before dying on August 2, 1965. p. 130

32. Pak Yong Sun–champion at the 33rd and 34th World Table Tennis Championships, a holder of the title of People's Athlete awarded in 1975 and a DPRK Labour Hero, whose title was awarded to her in 1985. She died on July 14, 1987. p. 130

33. Kim Jong Thae–a south Korean revolutionary who fought for national reunification. He worked as chairman of the Seoul City Committee of the Revolutionary Party for Reunification, an underground organization of the south Korean revolutionaries and the predecessor of the present National Democratic Front of South Korea, before being arrested by the south Korean police and shot dead in July 1969. He was a winner of the National Reunification Prize and the International Journalism Prize awarded on August 15, 1990 and on May 17, 1969, respectively. p. 130

34. Choe Tok Sin–a patriotic martyr. Born into an anti-Japanese independence campaigner's family, he graduated from the Hwangpu Military Academy in China in 1936, and served as an officer in the National Liberation Army, an armed organization of Korean nationalists. After Korea's liberation, he served in the south Korean army as a corps commander and later as south Korean Foreign Minister, casting himself as a key anti-communist element in south Korea. From January 1977 he lived in exile in the United States before obtaining permanent residence in the DPRK in September 1986. In the DPRK, he worked as Chairman of the Central Committee of the Chondoist Chongu Party and as Vice-Chairman of the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of the Fatherland. He died on November 16, 1989. p. 131

35. Choe Tong O–a patriotic figure. He was the headmaster of Hwasong Uisuk School, a

military and political school set up in Northeast China by the Korean anti-Japanese independence campaigners. Kim Il Sung entered the school in June 1926. After Korea's liberation, he worked in south Korea as a vice-chairman of the "Interim Legislative Council of South Korea" under the US Military Government. During the Fatherland Liberation War, he came over to the northern half of Korea, where he worked as a permanent member of the Consultative Council of Former South Korean Politicians in the North for the Promotion of Peaceful Reunification. He died on September 16, 1963. p. 131

36. Ryu Tong Yol–a patriotic figure. He launched an anti-Japanese campaign, following the disbanding by the Japanese imperialists of the Korean army in 1907.

After Korea's liberation, he worked as the head of the defence department under the US Military Government, and participated in the founding of the south Korean army.

Following the outbreak of the Fatherland Liberation War, he came over to the northern half of Korea, where he worked hard for national reunification. He died on October 18, 1950. p. 131

37. Kil Yong Jo–a pilot of the Korean People's Army who, on December 23, 1992, sacrificed himself when his plane went out of control. He piloted the aircraft out to sea to avoid crashing onto a residential area. p. 182

38. The Arduous March–a march of over 100 days made by the main force of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army from Nanpaizi to the China-Korea border areas along the Amnok River, from early December 1938 to March 1939. The march took place during the most difficult days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle. The marchers had to undergo temperatures of 40 degrees Centigrade below zero, an acute shortage of food, and constant attacks by pursuing Japanese troops. This is the background of the Arduous March recorded in the history of Korea. In the light of this background, the Korean people are calling the struggle they waged in the second half of the 1990s to overcome the difficulties the "Arduous March", ascribing their victory in the struggle to the spirit displayed by the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters during the Arduous March. p. 191

Printed in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea

No. 183179